...TITLE
...Harrison
...EMA

Practical French
Grammar By Pinney
Louis Allendorf

Spanish Language

E. is sounded like a — and

J. like E. G like H

A GRAMMAR

OF THE

SPANISH LANGUAGE,

FOR THE USE OF THE STUDENTS

IN

KING'S COLLEGE;

IN WHICH

THE PECULIAR QUALITIES AND ACCIDENTAL DIFFERENCES OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH ARE ACCURATELY ANALYSED,
AND THE SYNTAX FULLY EXPLAINED, EXEMPLIFIED, AND COMPARED WITH THE ENGLISH CONSTRUCTION:

WITH AN

APPENDIX,

CONTAINING

THE EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULES OF GENDERS,
AND TABLES OF THE SPANISH ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS OF A DIFFERENT ETYMOLOGY FROM THE SAME IN ENGLISH:

BY J. DE ALCALÁ, LL.B.

PROFESSOR OF SPANISH LITERATURE IN KING'S COLLEGE.

SECOND EDITION.

LONDON:
DULAU AND CO., 37 SOHO SQUARE.
1840.

PRINTED BY RICHARD AND JOHN E. TAYLOR,
RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.

PREFACE

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THIS Grammar has been submitted to the judgement of the public for four years, and the author is happy to state he has received with gratitude the approbation of many persons who, from their acquaintance with the Spanish language, are well qualified to pass their opinion on its merits, with regard to the accuracy of its rules, and the perspicuity of the examples therein given. The author avails himself of the opportunity which a new edition presents, to correct an omission which had escaped him at page 51, Rule II. there given: ought to have been accompanied by the observation that in certain cases it is now fallen into disuse. That page, therefore, as well as the following, have been in this edition entirely altered. Another important alteration is made at pages 69 and 70, where the English translation of some examples taken from Cervantes's Don Quixote is omitted, to leave ample room for some chosen exercises in the Pronouns, a part of speech somewhat intricate in the grammar of every language. The whole has been carefully revised, particularly the typographical part; and some mistakes of the press have been corrected, unavoidable in a work of this nature, in which the writer's attention is more fixed on the meaning and arrangement of the words than on orthography.

King's College, March 1838.

TO

JAMES CAMPBELL, JUN., ESQ.

MY MOST ESTEEMED FRIEND,

IN prefixing your name to this volume, I feel the gratification of offering a small testimony of my gratitude for the numerous favours which you have so often and kindly granted me, ever since I had the honour of assisting you in the acquisition of the Spanish tongue.

The knowledge you acquired of this beautiful language, by my verbal explanation of its rules, was rapid and complete; and I hope that by thus presenting them to you in a methodized form, this knowledge may be easily preserved.

Permit me, dear Sir, to declare the profound respect with which

I remain,

Ever your most grateful Friend,

JIMENEZ DE ALCALÁ.

PREFACE.

The expediency of an identical grammar for an academical class must be felt, not only by the Professor, but by the Students, it being necessary every moment, during the class, to refer to some rule or other, in order to show the reason why a certain construction ought to be used; and this cannot be done with effect unless the Professor is enabled to quote immediately the page, and the Student to look at the rule therein contained. All grammars of a foreign language, though essentially the same both in definitions and in the syntax, yet differ materially in the explanation of the rules, as every new compiler aims at making some fresh changes in the arrangement, in order to entitle him to call the work his own; changes which, being always arbitrary and often useless, render some Spanish grammars defective. The author, therefore, when he had the honour of being appointed to the Professorship of Spanish literature in King's College, formed for his class the grammar now offered to the public. The analytical part is here illustrated by tables, whenever the subject has required or permitted it; and the syntax, which is the science of language, is explained after the principles established by the Spanish Royal Academy, in conformity with the practice of the most eminent Spanish writers: the rules of the Spanish syntax are compared with those

of the English, the difference in the construction is shown, and the reason for such difference stated, because the peculiar idioms of every language are founded on some leading principles by which that language is characterized. The endeavour of the Author has been to explain, with perspicuity and accuracy, whatever his experience has convinced him to be essentially necessary for the acquisition of this most copious and majestic language.

It is a general practice to annex to foreign grammars a vocabulary, some dialogues, letters, fables, a treatise on versification and other matters, which, indeed, have no relation to the syntax; and as the Author has not followed such a practice, it will be proper to allege his reasons for the exclusion of such subjects.

No vocabulary;—because the substantives in a language are exceedingly numerous, and there is no more necessity to know the days of the week, the names of animals, the pieces of furniture or the utensils of a kitchen, than the name of everything created for or manufactured by man. A concise vocabulary, therefore, would be very imperfect in itself, insufficient for an illiterate person, and of little use to those who are versed in other languages. At all events, learners will be better judges of what they want to know; and by consulting the dictionary, they may easily compile, in a few hours, precise lists of those words which they most need to learn, according to their situation in life or their favourite study. But adjectives being comparatively few, and those of a common derivation easily rendered from one language into another by the Table of Analogy, page 43, a list of all Spanish adjectives of a different origin must be very useful to the student; and these will be found alphabetically placed in the Appendix, oc-

cupying only eight pages, and which learners are recommended to commit to memory as soon as possible. The Author is so convinced of the importance of knowing these dissimilar words, that he has willingly taken the labour of turning over the leaves of the voluminous Dictionary of the Spanish Academy in order to select those composing the list of adjectives; and for the same reason another list of adverbs of a different origin will be found in continuation.

No extracts;—because no selected chapter of Don Quixote, or other fragments from Spanish writers, can be of any real use to those who begin to learn the language, as the parts thus chosen are always imperfect pieces, and generally the most difficult. The student surely must have some Spanish books to read, and the book he begins with will certainly be the best to continue reading, as he will by degrees become more acquainted with both the subject of the work and the style of the writer.

No treatise on versification;—because those who never dreamt of Mount Parnassus will not care much about the Spanish Iambic, Trochaic or Anapæstic verses; and the lofty minds of the few favoured by Apollo will not stoop to look at some obscure pages of a foreign grammar on rhythmical measure, but will ascend to the Helicon and Cytheron, at the summits of which real poetry in every language can only be understood and valued. No opinion of Spanish poetry can be formed but by the study of Spanish poets.

No dialogues or letters;—because they will not teach those to speak or to write in a foreign language who cannot speak politely or write correctly in their maternal tongue; while those who can think will certainly speak and write in any language

by means only of the syntax, the elucidation of which is the scope of the present grammar.

In polite expression as well as in costume the nations of Europe and America, particularly in the capitals and sea-ports, are become so much alike that they form almost one same society with respect to civilities and epistolary correspondence either on political affairs, mercantile business, or friendly intercourse; and if any difference is sometimes observed, it is not the effect of a particular language, but the result of individual education and talents. A few phrases, it is true, are found peculiar to each language, the use of which, although not always necessary, is however so frequent that they must be mentioned, and such are stated in the last chapter of this grammar. All the Spanish idioms used in conversation or employed in reciprocal intelligence are there stated, so that students will obtain, reduced to a few pages, more elements for making their way in Spanish intercourse than they could by reading or learning a whole volume of dialogues, every expression in which may be altered in twenty different ways.

Finally, on perusing the contents of this volume, the Author hopes it will be perceived that the arrangement is simple, the connexion of its parts carefully observed, and the explanation, with the examples to the rules, accurate and perspicuous. Whether this grammar have really a claim to these qualities, must be decided by those only who are acquainted with the Spanish language, and by the impartial critics to whose judgement it is humbly submitted.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

ON THE NUMBER, VALUE, AND USE OF THE LETTERS IN THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

Page

CHAPTER I. *Alphabet and Pronunciation.* 1
Diphthongs and Triphthongs..... 4, 5

CHAPTER II. *Orthography of the Spanish Language* 6
Punctuation 8
Abbreviations 10

PART II.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I. *Of the Article* 12
Sect. 1. Analysis of the Spanish Article 13
Sect. 2. Syntax of the Article 14

CHAPTER II. *Of the Substantive Noun* 18
Sect. 1. Analysis of the Substantive Noun .. 20
Sect. 2. Syntax of the Substantive Noun ... 23

CHAPTER III. *Of the Adjective.*
Sect. 1. Of Nominal Adjectives 26
Sect. 2. Degrees of Comparison 28
Table of Comparisons..... 29
Sect. 3. Of Numeral Adjectives 34
Sect. 4. Syntax of the Adjectives..... 36
Concord of the Adjective 37
Sect. 5. Augmentatives and Diminutives ... 39
Display of Augmentatives and Diminutives 41
Sect. 6. Analogy of Words 42

		Page
Chapter IV.	*Of the Pronouns*	43
Sect. 1.	Analysis of Personal Pronouns....	44
	Syntax of Personal Pronouns	50
	Pronouns used in Spanish Address	52
Sect. 2.	Analysis of Demonstrative Pronouns	56
	Syntax of Demonstrative Pronouns	57
Sect. 3.	Analysis of Possessive Pronouns ..	58
	Syntax of Possessive Pronouns ...	61
Sect. 4.	Analysis of Relative Pronouns ...	63
	Syntax of Relative Pronouns	64
	Observations upon some Spanish Pronouns, the construction of which differs from the same in English	66
	A Table of Spanish and English Pronouns	71
Chapter V.	*Of the Verb in general*.....	72
Sect. 1.	On the Auxiliary Verbs	73
	Haber, *to have*	74
	Tener, *to have*	77
	Difference between *Haber* and *Tener*	80
	Of the Substantive Verb Ser, *to be*	81
	Of the Substantive Verb Estar, *to be*	84
	Difference between *Ser* and *Estar* .	87
	On the right use of *Ser* and *Estar* .	88
	Observations on the Verb *Ser*	95
Sect. 2.	On the Regular Verbs.	
	First Conjugation in ar	97
	Second Conjugation in er.....	100
	Third Conjugation in ir	103
Sect. 3.	Different methods of conjugating a Verb.	
	Passive Verbs	108
	Reflective Verbs	110
	Verbs with Negation.....	114
	Verbs with Interrogation	115
	Display of the regular verbal Terminations	117
	Regular Verbs for Exercise.....	119

Page

Sect. 4. On the Irregular Verbs.
Verbs of a common Irregularity 122
Verbs of an individual Irregularity 130
Observations upon some Irregular Verbs..... 138
Sect. 5. On the Impersonal Verbs.
Original Impersonal Verbs 140
Accidental Impersonal Verbs ... 141
Sect. 6. On the Defective Verbs 143

CHAPTER VI. *Syntax of the Verb* 145
Sect. 1. On the right use of the Tenses.
Indicative Mood 146
Imperative Mood 153
Subjunctive Mood..... 154
Infinitive Mood 166

CHAPTER VII. *Of the Participle* 172
Sect. 1. Analysis of the Participle 173
Sect. 2. Syntax of the Participle 176
Observations on the Participle .. 180

CHAPTER VIII. *Of the Adverb* 183
Syntax of the Adverb 184
Observations upon some of the Adverbs..... 185

CHAPTER IX. *Of the Prepositions*..... 192
Syntax of the Prepositions 193

CHAPTER X. *Of the Conjunctions* 201
Syntax of the Conjunctions 203

CHAPTER XI. *Of the Interjections* 205

CHAPTER XII. *Of Syntax in general.*
Sect. 1. Of Grammatical Concord 207
Sect. 2. Government of the Parts of Speech 213
Government of the Verb..... 215
Government of Prepositions 219

Page

Sect. 3. Of Grammatical Construction... 226
Similarity of the English and Spanish Construction 229
Specimen of free Spanish Construction 236
An Hispano-Latin Epistle..... 237
Summary of the Spanish Syntax. 239

Chapter XIII. *Idiomatical Expressions*..... 240
In Conversation..... 240
In Epistolary Correspondence .. 244

APPENDIX.

Exceptions to the Rules of Genders 263
A Table of Spanish Adjectives, and some Substantives adjectively used, of a different Etymology from the same in English..... 268
A Table of Spanish Adverbs of a different Etymology from the same in English..... 279

SPANISH GRAMMAR.

PART I.

ON THE NUMBER, VALUE, AND USE OF THE LETTERS IN THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

CHAPTER I.

ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

THERE are twenty-eight letters in the Spanish alphabet, according to the last system of the Spanish Academy, in which *ch*, *ll*, *ñ* and *rr* are adopted as distinct characters, each of them having its peculiar sound; and they are arranged in the following order:

A, B, C, Ch, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, L, Ll, M, N, ñ, O, P, Q, R, rr, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

The names of these letters are of the feminine gender, because the feminine word *letra* is understood; and they are more easily learned *vivâ voce* than by any combination of English letters, which cannot represent their particular sounds.

In Spanish, as in all languages, the letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants: the Spanish vowels are pronounced in a clear, equal and constant emission of the voice; the consonants are pronounced as in English, except the following, on which it is necessary to make some observations.

C.

C before *a*, *o*, *u*, sounds as in English; but before *e* and *i*, it is pronounced nearly the same as the *th* sharp in *theft*, *thick*, *thrift*.

Ch.

This letter has its peculiar sound, which is constantly the same, both at the beginning and in the middle of words, and it is the same as in *chess*, *cheese*, *chose*, *choose*.

G.

G before *a*, *o*, *u*, sounds as in English; but before *e* and *i*, it has an aspiration rather stronger than the English *h* in *hate*, *hell*, *hint*. Before *ue* and *ui* it sounds as in the English words *guest*, *guess*, *guilt*, *guitar*. There are only five words in which the *u* makes a diphthong with the *e* and *i*, when the two vowels are audible, though in a single emission of the voice: and these are *agüero* augury, *exangüe* exanguious, *halagüeño* fawning, *langüido* languid, and *pingüe* pinguid. These exceptions are constantly indicated by a diæresis over the *u* (*ü*).

H.

This letter is always mute: it is placed only before the diphthong *ue*, when a little of the guttural sound is perceived, and which is unavoidable on account of the emission of that diphthong; as in *hueso* bone, *huerta* kitchen-garden, *huevo* egg, *huerfano* orphan, &c. The student will observe, that Spaniards suppress the *h* after *t* and *c*, in all words derived from the Greek and Latin, and they write *ateismo*, *ética*, *ortografia*, *cristiano*, *cronologia*, &c.

Ll.

This letter has a liquid articulation not to be found in English; it is much the same as in the French words *vaillant*, *meilleur*, *veiller*; or in the Italian *battaglia*, *figlio*, *moglie*. The English words *brilliant* and *million* give but an imperfect idea of its proper sound.

J.

This letter before any of the vowels is always aspirated in Spanish, something more forcibly than the *h* in *harsh*, *hate*, *hit*, *hot*, *who*.

Ñ.

The sound of this letter is not to be found in any English word; but it is easily learned. It is entirely similar to the *gn* of the French in *gagner, dignité,* or of the Italian *vergogna, agnello, bisogno,* &c.

Q.

This letter, before *ua* and *uo,* sounds as in English; in such cases, however, the letter *c* is now constantly substituted for *q*. *Q* before *ue* and *ui* sounds always like the English *k,* the place of which is supplied in Spanish by *qu*: Ex.—*Quando, quatro, quociente, quota,* now *cuando* when, *cuatro* four, *cuota* a share; *queja* complaint, *esqueleto* skeleton, *esquina* corner.

rr.

This letter consists of *r* doubled, and can occur only in the middle of words: it has a sharper sound than in the words *currant, occurrence, currycomb*: Ex.—*Barro* clay, *carril* rut, *burro* ass.

X.

In the new system of Spanish orthography, this letter has always the same sound as in English. It was formerly aspirated in many words, but at present *j* has been substituted for it. See the next chapter, on the Spanish Orthography.

Y.

This letter is a consonant, and its sound before a vowel is like the English *j*. It has been left as a vowel in the conjunction *y*, and *muy* very, and in a few other words, as *buey, ley, rey*; but it becomes a consonant in the plural, *bueyes* oxen, *leyes* laws, *reyes* kings.

SYNOPSIS OF THE SPANISH PRONUNCIATION.

C.

Cama, bed.
paca, bale.
copo, flake.
poco, little.
cuna, cradle.
nuca, nape.
cielo, heaven.
acido, acid.
ceceo, lisp.

Ch.

Charco, pool.
fecha, date.
Chile, Chili.
leche, milk.
Sancho, Sancho.
chupa, jacket.
muchacho, boy.
bachiller, bachelor.
pecho, breast.
puchero, pot.

G.

Gala, court-dress.
gente, people.
giro, gyre.
trage, costume.
ginete, horseman.
página, page.
gota, drop.
gusto, taste.
guerra, war.
guia, guide.
dengue, prudery.
agüero, augury.
degüello, decollation.
exangüe, bloodless.
halagüeno, flattering.
langüido, languid.
pingüe, abundant.

H.

Hado, fate.
hecho, fact.
hilo, thread.
ahora, now.
hembra, female.
ahogado, drowned.
hueco, hollow.
huerfano, orphan.
hueso, bone.
huesped, guest.
huevo, egg.

J.

Jamon, ham.
jardin, garden.
naranja, orange.
cuajada, curd.
Jesuita, Jesuit.
jefe, chief.
hijo, son.
justo, just.
Quijote, Quixote.
lejos, far.
jornada, journey.
manejo, management
trabajo, labour.
cojo, lame.

Ll.

Llama, flame.
malla, mesh.
lloro, weeping.
rollo, roll.
calle, street.
aullido, howl.
lluvia, rain.
pollo, chicken.
chillido, shriek.
medalla, medal.
relleno, replete.
rollizo, plump.
hollin, soot.
velludo, hairy.

N.

Maña, dexterity.
mañana, tomorrow.
niño, child.
niñeria, puerility.
año, year.
Señor, Sir.

Q.

Querido, dear.
quieto, quiet.
aquel, that.
aquella, that.
parque, park.
bienquisto, esteemed.

r and *rr*.

Para, for.
parra, vine.
pero, but.
perro, dog.
caro, dear.
carro, cart.
cero, zero.
cerro, mountain.
ara, altar.
arras, dowry.
vara, yard.
barra, bar.
arido, dry.
arrimo, support.
barril, barrel.

Y.

Muy, very.
buey, ox.
bueyes, oxen.
grey, flock.
greyes, flocks.
ley, law.
leyes, laws.
rey, king.
reyes, kings.
yerba, grass.
yugo, yoke.
rayo, thunder.
ayuda, help.

DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is the coalition of two vowels to form one sound; and according to this grammatical definition, there is not a diphthong in the Spanish language. The name, however, is commonly given to those syllables where the coalition of two vowels renders the sound of the last very feeble, but always audible; and should

any of the two vowels be accented, it ceases to be a diphthong, the two vowels in such cases making two syllables.

There are sixteen of these diphthongs in Spanish, which are classed in the following list:

ay *or* ai	*Aire* air, *baile* ball, *donaire* grace.
au	*Causa* cause, *pausa* pause.
ey *or* ei	*Aceite* oil, *peine* comb.
ea	*Linea* line, *ebúrnea* made of ivory.
eo	*Craneo* skull, *erroneo* erroneous.
eu	*Europa*, *feudo* fief.
ia	*Gloria* glory, *gracia* grace, *curia* court.
ie	*Cielo* heaven, *pie* foot, *quieto* quiet.
io	*Necio* fool, *precio* price, *estudio* study.
iu	*Ciudad* city, *diuturno* of long duration.
oe	*Heroe* hero.
oy *or* oi	*Hoy* today, *coi* hammock.
ua	*Agua* water, *fragua* forge.
ue	*Huerto* orchard, *suelo* floor.
uy *or* ui	*Cuidado* care, *muy* very.
uo	*Inicuo* iniquitous, *mutuo* mutual.

TRIPHTHONGS.

As a Diphthong is the coalition of two, so a Triphthong is the coalition of three vowels to form one sound. There is not a single word in Spanish in which three vowels make one syllable, and it would be absurd to divide a triphthong. There is however a substantive, and an interjection, in which three vowels are sounded in rapid succession, though composed of two syllables, as *buey* ox, and *guay* oh! Three successive vowels are also found in the present tenses of verbs ending in *iar*, as *copiar* to copy, *copiais*; *limpiar* to clean, *limpiais*, &c.; and even four successive vowels are found in the preter-imperfect of the verbs ending in *eer*, as *leer* to read, *leiais*; *poseer* to possess, *poseiais*, &c.; but as such vowels form three or four syllables, they cannot be classed as triphthongs; otherwise we might admit quadripartite quadriphthongs.

CHAPTER II.

ORTHOGRAPHY OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE.

The most natural definition of Orthography seems to be "The art of representing, by means of letters, the words uttered by man to convey his thoughts to another individual." The Spanish language, according to this rational principle, has rendered the characters subservient to the sounds they represent; while other highly polished languages of Europe have almost entirely separated their orthography from their pronunciation. In French, one language is written and another pronounced; the sounds however are constant, and reduced to rules. The words in English are not only written differently from their sounds, but in many instances they are of an uncertain pronunciation, and the best lexicographers do not agree in the spelling, in the accent, nor in the sound of many letters. In Spanish, on the contrary, the sound of every letter is constantly the same, and every letter is pronounced. The *u*, in a few words, is the only exception; because, although the *u* in the four syllables *gue*, *gui*, *que*, *qui* is not sounded, it is because it forms with the *g* and *q* a letter equivalent to the English *k*, which has been ejected from the Spanish alphabet. The *u* in these syllables has the same office as the *h* after *c* and *g* in the Italian, these sister languages agreeing almost entirely in orthography.

This simplicity of the Spanish orthography is not new; it began as early as the fourteenth century, when the best writers unanimously rejected the reduplication of the same consonant, such as *bb*, *cc*, *ff*, *gg*, *mm*, *nn*, *pp*, *ss*, *tt*, *zz*, still retained in other modern languages. Some letters, however, continued to be used indifferently to express one and the same sound; as *ch* for *c*, *ph* for *f*, *x* for *j*, and *y* for *i*, till the Spanish Academy undertook to systematize this essential part of the language, and by gradual reform the present orthography has been fixed, and generally adopted. This system is now more simple, regular, and perfect, than that of any other living

language: no consonant is on any account ever doubled, unless the two have distinct sounds, as in *accion*, *accidente*, where the first *c* serves for *k*, and the second for *th*; no word can begin with an *s* followed by another consonant, but an *e* must be prefixed, as *esfera*, *espíritu*; no word can end with two consonants, nor can three consonants be allowed to follow each other immediately, except *m*, *n*, or *s*, before *gr*, *pl*, or *tr*, as *congreso*, *contra*, *impropio*, &c.; because in such words the sound of each consonant is distinctly audible. From these observations it appears, that the Spanish orthography is reduced to this simple rule, viz. That every word must be written as it is pronounced.

This rule may be sufficiently clear to a Spaniard; but a foreigner, who generally reads Spanish books printed many years ago, is in need of some observations to comprehend fully the latest orthographical changes which were made at the beginning of the present century.

J.

Those verbs, the characteristic letter of which was *g*, are now written with *j*, to avoid the necessary change of the one for the other in the present tense; as, *clejir* to elect, *protejer* to protect, *exijir* to exact, &c.; which make the present tense *elijo* and *elija*, *protejo* and *proteja*, *exijo* and *exija*; and thus every appearance of irregularity disappears.

M.

No word in Spanish can end in *m*, on account of its dull sound; the *n* is constantly substituted, as *Abrahan*, *Adan*, *Jerusalen*, &c.

N.

Those words which are formed with the Latin preposition *trans*, drop the *n*, for the purpose of rendering the pronunciation more agreeable to the ear. Thus, *transcendencia*, *transcurso*, *translacion*, &c. are now written *trascendencia*, &c.

Q.

Whenever the *u* that follows the *q* is pronounced, the *c* must be used instead of *q*. Thus, *qual*, *quando*,

frequente, aqueducto, &c., are now constantly written *cuando, cual, frecuente, acueducto,* &c.

S.

This letter has been lately substituted for *x* before any consonant, to render the pronunciation softer. Thus, *extraño* strange, *extrangero, extremo, extenso, extraordinario,* &c., are now written *estraño, estrangero, estraordinario,* &c.

X.

This letter, as I have observed before, is retained only in those words in which its sound is equivalent to *cs*, as in *examen, sintaxis, existencia, exordio,* &c. The guttural sound which the *x* formerly had, is now given to the *j*; and before *e* or *i*, it may be given to the *g*. Thus, *Xefe* chief, *exemplo, Quixote, Alexandro, Xerxes, Xenofonte,* &c., are now written *Jefe, ejemplo, Quijote, Alejandro, Jerjes, Jenofonte.* It would be better that names derived from the Greek should retain the *x*, and be pronounced like *cs*; but if it is easy to alter the orthography of some words, it is not so to alter their pronunciation; the former may be effected by the agreement of some leading writers, the latter would require the acquiescence of every individual who speaks the language.

Z.

This letter is used before the vowels *a, o, u,* but before *e* and *i* the *c* is preferred; as in the plurals of *paz* peace, *luz* light, *feliz* happy, &c., which make *paces, luces, felices,* &c. Four words only have stood against this innovation; these are *zelo* zeal, *zelos* jealousy, *zeta* the name of a letter, and *zizaña* darnel.

Obs.—No Spanish word can end in any of the following consonants, *b, c, f, g, h, j, m, p, q, t,* or *x*: the final letter must be *d, l, n, r, s, z,* or one of the vowels.

OF PUNCTUATION.

The use of points and commas is the same in Spanish as in English. There is some difference with regard to

accent, the mark of interrogation, and the division of syllables.

Accent.—There is but one accent in Spanish, and of course it has no specific name; it is marked thus (′). The stress in every Spanish word is supposed to fall on the penultimate, except when it falls on the last, or the antepenult, and the accent is then put upon the vowel of that syllable.

There are some monosyllables that have more than one signification; and in order to distinguish them, the accent is put on those which seem to be more emphatically uttered. Thus, *el*, *mi*, *que*, *si*, &c., signify 'the, my, that, if'; but *él*, *á mí*, *qué*, *sí*, signify 'he, to me, what, yes'. Ex.—

Tú y él hablasteis contra mí, sí, lo sé; tu hermano me lo dijo en el jardin; mas qué haré? dé el otro una escusa, y que se abstenga de semejantes murmuraciones.

You and he have spoken against me, yes, I know it; your brother told me so in the garden; but what shall I do? let the other give some excuse.

When the letters *á*, *é*, *í*, *ó*, *ú*, stand alone as prepositions or conjunctions, they are accented.

There was formerly a circumflex accent, used to distinguish the soft sound of the *x* from the harsh sound it used to have; but this letter being now reduced to one sound, the accent has been rendered useless.

Interrogation.—The Spanish language has the singularity of putting an inverse note of interrogation at the beginning of a question, to warn the reader of the sense, that he may give in time the whole emphasis to the expression; otherwise the general omission of personal pronouns would mislead the reader. Ex.—*¿Se tiene por cosa increible entre vosotros que Dios resucite los muertos?*

Without the inverted mark at the beginning of the sentence, the reader might think the expression was in the affirmative. If there are many questions successively, the inverted note is prefixed only to the first; and whenever the interrogation is sufficiently indicated

by the form of expression, the inverted mark is omitted. Ex.—*Un amigo no cesa de preguntarme, cuando iremos á la corte? qué vestido hemos de llevar? cómo hemos de volver?* 'A friend of mine continually asks me, when shall we go to court? in what sort of dress must we go? how shall we return?' Here the accent in *cuando*, *qué*, and *cómo*, is a sufficient mark of interrogation.

The preceding observations may be applied to the inverted note of Admiration.

Partition of Syllables.—Nothing can be more simple than the division of syllables in Spanish words, on account of the proportionate number of vowels and consonants. It may be reduced to a single rule;—When there is a consonant between two vowels, it will form a syllable with the vowel that follows it: as in *alarido* outcry, *a-la-ri-do*; *apaleado* beaten, *a-pa-le-a-do*; &c. The only exception to this rule are words compounded with the prepositions *sub* and *des*, as *sub-al-ter-no*, *des-a-cor-dar* to disagree, &c.

Obs.—The double *ll* and *rr* cannot be divided, they being one character, as may be seen in the alphabet.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Abbreviations have been introduced to save the trouble of repeating titles or respectful appellations, or to shorten a long word; but with the exception of *vm.* for *usted*, (*you* in polite style,) it will be better not to abridge any word in Spanish hand-writing.

Those abbreviations generally adopted by the Spanish press, and by some in epistolary correspondence, will be better learned by perusing the following list.

A. C.	Año Cristiano.	B^{mo} P.	Beatisimo Padre.
A A.	autores.	C. M. B.	Cuyas manos besa.
Adm^{or}.	administrador.	C. P. B.	Cuyos pies besa.
Ag^{to}.	Agosto.	Cap.	Capitulo.
app^{o}.	apostolico.	Cap^{n}.	Capitan.
Art.	Articulo.	Capp^{n}.	Capellan.
Arzbpo.	Arzobispo.	Comp^{a}.	Compania.
B^{r}.	Bachiller.	Cons^{o}.	Consejo (tribunal).
B. L. M.	Beso las manos.	conv^{te}.	conveniente.
B. L. P.	Beso los pies.	corr^{te}.	corriente.

Dn.	Don.
Da.	Doña.
DD.	Doctores.
Dr.	Doctor.
dho.	dicho.
dro.	derecho.
Dicre.	Diciembre.
Domo.	Domingo.
eccº.	eclesiastico.
Eno.	Enero.
Exmo.	Eccelentisimo.
fho, fha.	fecho, fecha.
Febo.	Febrero.
Fr.	Fray.
Franco.	Francisco.
gde.	guarde.
Genl.	General.
gral.	general.
Igla.	Iglesia.
Ille.	Ilustre.
Illmo.	Ilustrisimo.
Jhs.	Jesus.
Inqor.	Inquisidor.
Liedo.	Licenciado.
M. P. S.	Muy Poderoso Señor.
ms. as.	muchos años.
Magd.	Magestad.
Maymo.	Mayordomo.
Migl.	Miguel.
Minro.	Ministro.
mrd.	merced.
Mro.	Maestro.
mrs.	maravedis.
N. S.	Nuestro Señor.
nro, nra.	nuestro, nuestra.
Novre.	Noviembre.
Obpo.	Obispo.
Octre.	Octubre.
Orn.	Orden.
P. D.	Posdata.
pa.	para.
Pe.	Padre.
pr.	por.
pta.	plata.
ppco.	público.
pral.	principal.

Prõr.	Procurador.
Provor.	Provisor.
qe.	que.
qn.	quien.
R. P. M.	Reverendo Padre Maestro.
Rl, Rles.	Real, Reales.
rs.	reales (moneda).
Rdo.	Reverendo.
Rmo.	Reverendisimo.
Sn.	San.
Sto.	Santo.
S. M.	Su Magestad.
S. Sd.	Su Santidad.
Sr, Sor.	Señor.
S. S. S.	Su seguro servidor.
Secretº.	Secretario.
Setre.	Setiembre.
Sermo.	Serenisimo.
servor.	servidor.
sigte.	siguiente.
Smo.	Santisimo.
SSmo Pe	Santisimo Padre.
SSno.	Escribano.
supca.	suplica.
supte.	suplicante.
Superte.	Superintendente.
Tente.	Teniente.
tpo.	tiempo.
Vene.	Venerable.
V. A.	Vuestra Alteza.
V. Bd.	Vuestra Beatitud.
V. E.	Vuestra Eccelencia.
v. g.	verbi gracia.
V. M.	Vuestra Magestad.
Vm, vmd.	vsted, vuesa merced.
Vms, vmds.	ustedes.
V. P.	Vuestra Paternidad.
V. Ra.	Vuestra Reverencia.
V. S.	Vueseñoria.
V. Sd.	Vuestra Santidad.
V. S. I.	Vueseñoria ilustrisima.
vn.	vellon.
vro, vra.	vuestro, vuestra.
Xpto.	Cristo.
Xptiano.	Cristiano.

PART II.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

I SHALL now proceed to the detail of the Parts of Speech, analysing separately the nature and accidents of each of these fundamental words, and explaining after each analysis the place and modification each part ought to assume in Spanish phraseology, in order to form a clear and elegant discourse, according to the rules of grammar, and the practice of the most eminent Spanish authors.

Though there are myriads of words in every language to express mutually our wants, our feelings, and our thoughts, yet on examining the nature, the meaning, and appropriations of these words, we may reduce them under a small number of classes. Some grammarians have divided them into three classes,—the Noun, the Verb, and the Particle; others have admitted five, adding the Article and Participle; others reckon six, classing together the Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection and Participle; while others reckon ten, separating the Substantive from the Adjective. The Spanish Royal Academy has admitted only nine parts, which I shall here follow, being generally received as the standard of the Castilian language:—ARTICLE, NOUN, PRONOUN, VERB, PARTICIPLE, ADVERB, PREPOSITION, CONJUNCTION, INTERJECTION.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ARTICLE.

The Article is a word placed before nouns and pronouns to specify the extent of their signification, their gender, number and case, for want of declensions.

Section I.

Analysis of the Spanish Article.

In Spanish, as in English, there are two sorts of Articles: one called *definite*, because it points out the individual or the object intended; and the other called *indefinite*, because it indicates an individual or an object of one kind, without expressing the particular object of the discourse. If I say, *hay un colegio en una ciudad*, 'there is a college in a town,' I only give an imperfect information, no particular college or place being defined; but when I say, *el colegio del Rey está en Londres*, 'King's College is in London,' both the institution and place are defined, and the idea is fixed.

In English there is but one definite article; in other languages there are two; the Spanish possesses the advantage of having three; *el* for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *lo* for the neuter; and they are declined thus:

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	El	La	Lo
G.	del	de la	de lo
D.	al	á la	á lo
A.	el *or* al	la	lo
Ab.	del	de la	de lo

Plural.

N.	Los	Las
G.	de los	de las
D.	á los	á las
A.	los	las
Ab.	de los	de las

The neuter article has no plural, because it serves to express an individual quality of the subject. It is chiefly applied to adjectives expressing qualities without reference to a particular individual, and consequently it could not be masculine or feminine: *lo bueno*, the quality of being good; *lo mejor*, the circumstance of being better; *lo hermoso*, the advantage of being handsome;

lo cortesano, the recommendation of being courteous, &c. By means of this neuter article all the adjectives are rendered substantives, and many substantives are rendered adjectives, forming expressions of great energy and grace. Ex.—*Todo era grande en Carlos V., lo cristiano y lo noble, lo rey y lo justo, lo capitan y lo generoso;* 'everything was great in Charles V., the feelings of a Christian and his high sense of honour, the royal dignity and impartial justice, the talents of a commander and moderation in his victories.' In this sentence there are three substantives used as adjectives.

Section II.

Syntax of the Articles.

Preliminary Observation.—I beg the student to observe, 1st, That, treating on the Syntax of each part of speech, after its analysis, as I have thought to be proper, I shall omit the grammatical rules common to all languages, confining myself to those which constitute the Spanish idioms. 2ndly, That there are many idiomatical phrases not mentioned here, and which can only be learned by reading and practice, it being almost impossible to give in a grammar all the peculiarities of so rich a language as the Spanish is considered to be by the most able philologists. Lastly, That in the course of this grammar, I shall leave untranslated the sentences given as examples, when the meaning is obvious; thus the attention of the student will be called from the first to the translation of the Spanish. I intend to give, in the Appendix, lists of all the Spanish adjectives and adverbs of different etymology; and all the pronouns, prepositions, conjunctions and interjections, after their respective analyses, that the student may learn them at leisure; so that he will have only to look for the meaning of some nouns and verbs.

General Rule.—Every word in Spanish, whether a substantive or adjective, the infinitive of verbs, an adverb, conjunction or interjection, when it designates a genus, the whole species, or an individual, requires its cor-

responding article. Ex.—*el genero humano*, mankind; *el hombre ó la muger*, man or woman; *el padre ó la madre*; *lo diligente del estudiante*, the habit of industry of the scholar; *lo facilmente que aprende*, the facility with which he learns; *el estudiar atentamente*, the attention to his studies; *el por qué de las cosas*; *el sí y el no*, the yes and the no, &c.

Though this general rule might be sufficient to guide the student in the application of the Spanish article, I shall, however, add here some particular rules, to show the different use of this part of speech in both languages.

1. The names of metals, and of everything else denoting the whole species to which it belongs, require the article. Ex.—*El vino es saludable, pero el agua lo es mas*, wine is wholesome, but water is more so; *aunque el hierro es mas util que el oro, este es mas apetecido que aquel*, though iron is more useful than gold, the latter is more sought after.

2. The names of the seasons of the year, the days of the month and week, and the hours of the day, require the article. Ex.—*el otoño, el invierno, la primavera, el verano*, autumn, winter, spring, summer: *el lunes, el jueves*, Monday, Thursday; *la una, las seis, las doce*, &c.

3. The article is placed before a few names of countries and towns fixed by custom, such as *la China, el Japon, el Peru, la Havana, el Piamonte, la Tartaria, la Siberia, el Ferrol, la Coruña*. Ex.—*la China, de la China, á la China*, &c. But the quarters of the globe, and other countries, may be declined with or without the definite article, according to the determinate or indeterminate sense in which they are taken.

4. *Señor* or *Señora, Amo* or *Ama*, Master or Mistress, and common names of dignity or profession before the proper name of individuals, require the article. Ex.—*el Señor Campbell, la Señorita Hall*; *el Amo está ausente*; *el Ama está enferma*; *el Rey Fernando, la Princesa Victoria; el Mariscal Bourmont, el Almirante Napier*, &c. But *Don* and *Doña*, usual names of courtesy, do not take the article. Ex.—*Don Juan, Doña Elvira, Don Octavio, Doña Ana*, &c.

5. The definite article may be repeated or not before every substantive in succession; the repetition gives more emphasis to the expression. Ex.—*Toda la hermosura, la gracia, los ruegos, y las lagrimas de la esposa no pudieron calmar su ira*; all the beauty, the grace, the entreaties and tears of the wife could not appease his anger.

6. The article is omitted in Spanish before the ordinal numbers applied to the names of sovereigns. Ex. —*Guillelmo Cuarto*, William IV.; *Carlos Doce*, Charles XII.; *Catalina Segunda*, Catherine II., &c.

7. Before nouns of measure, weight, or anything sold, the Spanish requires the definite article, instead of the indefinite *a* or *an* used in English. Ex.—*En Madrid se vende el cahiz de trigo á doce pesos*; in Madrid a quarter (12 Spanish bushels) of wheat is sold for twelve dollars; *El vino se vende en Sevilla á un peso la arroba*; wine is sold in Seville 32 pints for five shillings.

The English indefinite article *a* is rendered in Spanish by *un* for the masculine, and *una* for the feminine gender. The student cannot confound this article with the number *uno*, one, *because* the article *uno* loses the *o* before every noun: *un poeta, un escritor*, &c.

The English indefinite article *a* is used in many cases in which the Spanish *un* or *una* cannot be employed. The following rule will explain the difference.

Rule. The indefinite article is used in Spanish only when the noun is characterized by itself, or by any subsequent word. Ex.—*Buenaparte era* un *general afortunado*; *Mr. Canning era* un *orador facundo*; *Esa Señora fue* una *santa; pero su hija es* una *muger infame.* But if the noun expresses merely the profession, rank, or situation in life, the article is then omitted. Ex.— *Vm. es Ingles, y yo soy Español*; *El hermano mayor es coronel, y el menor capitan*, the eldest brother is a colonel, and the youngest a captain; *Esta Señora es casada, y aquella es viuda*, this lady is a married woman, and that is a widow.

N.B. There are in Spanish a few feminine nouns beginning with *á* accented or understood; and as the femi-

nine article ends in *a*, and no apostrophe or elision is admitted in Spanish, the coalition of the two vowels would produce a harsh sound: in such cases the masculine article *el* is given to the feminine noun in the singular, and the cacophony is avoided. The following are all the feminine nouns beginning with *a* accented.

Ábra, a cove.
acta, act.
agua, water.
águila, eagle.
ala, wing.
alba, dawn.
alga, sea-weed.
alma, soul.
ama, nurse.
anca, croup.
ancla, anchor.
angra, creek.
ánima, the bore of a barrel.
anta, kind of elk.
ara, altar.
arca, chest.
area, area.
árgana, crane.
arma, arm.
arpa, harp.
arte, art.
asa, handle.
aspa, sort of cross.
asta, horn.
aula, lecture-room.
aura, a gentle breeze.
ave, fowl.
haba, bean.
habla, speech.
hacha, hatchet.
haya, beech-tree.

Comparative Examples.

El oro es apetecido de todos.
Gold is desired by all.

El hombre anda, las bestias trotan, y los pájaros vuelan.
Man walks, beasts trot, and birds fly.

El té viene de la China, el mejor café de Moca, y el cacao de America.
Tea comes from China, the best coffee from Moca, and cocoa from America.

Cada dia excepto los domingos.
Every day except Sundays.

Cien casas y mil habitantes.
A hundred houses and a thousand inhabitants.

Themes.

Wit and grace captivate more than beauty.
ingenio *cautivar* *hermosura.*

All men and women are the same in all countries.

That gentleman is a Pole, his father was a general,
caballero *Polaco*
and his mother is of a noble family.

I will come at two, and shall go at four o'clock.
venir *ir*

Rules will be of little use, if students have not an
regla *estudiante tener*

eager desire to learn a foreign language.
vivo deseo aprender estrangero lengua.

Exercise.

Uses of the article.—The article in modern languages is a very useful and curious contrivance for determining the individual object intended. The Latin has no article, and to supply its place it is necessary to make use of the pronouns *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, which seems to be a defect in this language, since articles certainly contribute much to accuracy and precision. The Greek has but one, corresponding to the definite article in modern languages. The English has two; the indefinite *a*, which is more general, and the definite *the*, for both genders and numbers. The Spanish has five; two indefinite, *un* and *una*, for masculine and feminine substantives; and three definite, *el* for the masculine gender, *la* for the feminine, and the neuter *lo* for the adjectives when they express qualities founded on no reference to a particular individual; as, *lo claro*, the quality of being clear; *lo oscuro*, the quality of being dark.

Meaning of words.—Contrivance, *artificio*; to determine, *determinar*; to intend, *intentar*; to supply, *suplir*; place, *lugar*; to make, *hacer*; to seem, *parecer*; to contribute, *contribuir*; accuracy, *exactitud*; Greek, *Griego*; to correspond, *corresponder*; gender, *género*; number, *número*; to express, *espresar*; to found, *fundar*. For the rest, the student will look at the lists of adjectives, pronouns, adverbs and prepositions, in their respective places.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE SUBSTANTIVE NOUN.

The Noun is divided into two kinds, Substantive and Adjective. The substantive, of which I treat now, expresses the object, either real or imaginary, in an abso-

lute sense, which we easily perceive or comprehend by itself, without the assistance of any other word. Grammarians have divided the substantive noun into various classes, of which the following are the principal.

Proper nouns are those which distinguish an individual person or thing from other individuals of the same kind, as *Socrates*, *Lucrecia*, *Vesuvio*, *Támesis*, &c.

Common nouns are those which are equally applicable to many or to all the individuals of the same kind, as *hombre*, *heroe*, *colegio*, *estudiante*, &c.

Patronymics are those nouns which express the name of the father, as *Fernandez*, son of Fernando; *Sanchez*, son of Sancho; *Rodriguez*, son of Rodrigo, &c.

Primitives are those original words which are not derived from others in the same language, as *cielo*, *tierra*, *padre*, *hijo*, &c.

Derivatives are those words which are derived from a noun that serves as a root in their formation. The Spanish is the richest of modern languages in the manifold terminations given to a primitive word: twenty-two words are derived from *rama*, a branch, and many more from *aguja* needle, *labor* tillage, and from others which may be seen in the Dictionary of the Spanish Academy.

Collectives. These words are of two sorts; *Definite*, which express a union of persons or things forming a regular body, as *parlamento*, *ejercito* army, *regimiento*, &c.;—*Indefinite*, which express a collection of persons or things without constituting a limited assemblage, as *multitud*, *pueblo*, *concurso*, *tropa* troop, &c.

Compound nouns are those which are formed of two or more words, with a little alteration, such as *manuscrito*, *parasol*, *guarda fuego* fenders, &c. The Spanish is pre-eminent in this sort of words, which are formed with singular grace, and give much expression to the discourse. The substantives *barba* beard, *boca* mouth, *mano* hand, *pelo* hair, and many others, joined to a great many adjectives, indicate in a pointed manner the qualities of persons, which in other languages would require long circumlocutions. About 150 words are formed with the preposition *sobre*, the Latin *super*.

Section I.

Analysis of the Substantive Noun.

Every noun in Spanish has a gender; it may express one or more objects; and it is declinable in cases by means of prepositions. These three accidents of the noun being equally applicable to the substantive and to the adjective, the general observations I shall make here on the former will also be understood of the latter.

I. *Of the Gender.*—The English language, adhering strictly to Nature, has assigned the masculine gender only to the male, and the feminine to the female; except in the case of a very few inanimate objects, to which custom, probably derived from poetical fancy, has ascribed a gender that does not belong to them; and even this gender is applicable only to the third person singular of the pronoun; the article, substantives, adjectives, and participles being in English deprived of sexual terminations. The Spanish, on the contrary, has given the masculine or the feminine gender to every substantive, adjective, article, pronoun and participle, easily distinguished by their own terminations, without the assistance of any other part of the discourse. The dissatisfied philologist, seeing no accountable reason for this system of gender, may declare it absurd and ridiculous; but in languages, the ear and euphony, not less than grammar and reason, must be attended to; and thus it is that to this apparent inconsistency the Spanish owes that rich variety of harmonious terminations, so elegant in prose, so beautiful in rhyme, and so useful to the poet.

Spanish substantives are either of the masculine or of the feminine gender, the distinction of which presents to the English learner considerable embarrassment; some rules, however, may assist in surmounting this difficulty.

It is a general rule, and common to all languages, that the names of all males, and those relating to the male kind, such as dignities, professions, employment, &c., whatever their terminations may be, are invariably of the masculine gender; as, *hombre*, man; *niño*, male

child; *rey*, king; *general*; *obispo*, bishop; *papa*, pope; *monje*, monk, &c. And the names of all females, or their situations in life, are invariably of the feminine gender; as *muger*, woman; *niña*, female child; *emperatriz*, empress; *madre*, mother, &c. This method of distinguishing the gender by the meaning of the words is obvious, but not so by their terminations. I shall here give the general rules; and when the exceptions are numerous, I refer the student to the Appendix, where he will find lists of such exceptions.

1. Substantives ending in *o* are masculine. There are but two exceptions, *mano*, hand, and *nao*, ship, which are feminine.

2. Substantives ending in *e*, *i*, *u*, are masculine, except those in the Appendix No. I.

3. Substantives ending in *l*, *n*, *r*, *z*, are masculine, except those in the Appendix No. II.

4. Substantives ending in *a* are feminine, except those in the Appendix No. III.

5. Substantives ending in *d* or *ion* are invariably feminine.

6. Proper names of mountains and rivers are generally masculine, because the common nouns *monte* mount, and *rio* river, which are understood, belong to the masculine gender; thus, *el Etna*, *el Guadiana*, *el Sena*, *el Tamesis*, &c., mean *el monte Etna*, *el rio Guadiana*, *el rio Tamesis*, &c.

For the same reason the names of cities are feminine, because the noun *ciudad*, city, which is understood, belongs to the feminine gender; as *Londres*, *Madrid*, *Toledo*, *Badajoz*, &c., mean *la ciudad de Londres*, &c. But as the names of cities and towns do not admit the article, there cannot be a mistake, unless an adjective follows, as, *Londres la opulenta*, *Paris la hermosa*, *Toledo la antigua*, *Gibraltar la fuerte*, &c.

There are some substantives in Spanish to which, in imitation of the Latin, the same gender is given both to male and female of the same kind: these are, *avestruz* ostrich, *cuervo* crow, *raton* mouse, and *milano* kite, which are masculine; and *águila*, *perdiz* partridge, and

tortola dove, which are feminine. And there are a few, the gender of which being doubtful, admit indifferently the masculine or the feminine, as *mar* sea, *puente* bridge.

II. *Of the Numbers.*—In Spanish, as in all modern languages, there are but two numbers, the singular and the plural which are easily formed from the one into the other, as may be seen by the following rules.

1. If the singular end in a vowel, the plural is formed by the simple addition of an *s*. But there are a few ending in *y*, and in *i* accented, which require *es* in the plural; as, *grey*, flock; *ley*, law; *alelí*, gilliflower; *borcequí*, buskin, &c., which make *greyes*, *leyes*, *alelíes*, &c.

2. Nouns ending in a consonant must have the addition of *es* to form their plurals, because in Spanish no word whatever can end in two consonants, as it has been observed in the Orthography.

Obs.—The days of the week, *Lunes*, *Martes*, *Miercoles*, *Jueves*, and *Viernes*, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, and Friday, do not augment in the plural. There are also a few which have no singular, as *albricias* a gift, *alicates* pincers.

III. *Of the Cases.*—In the Latin language the nouns are modified by different terminations called Cases, each of which points out in a clear manner the connexion of one object with another; but this nicety of expression was abandoned by the rude Goths and other barbarous nations, when they took possession of those countries where the Roman language was spoken; and though the Spanish in its structure resembles the Latin more than any other, it is however deprived of inflections in the nouns; but the names of those cases have been properly retained in the Spanish grammar, for the more easy explanation of the Spanish construction. The English, reduced to a more simple grammatical structure, may reject the system of declensions, because the nominative or subject of a sentence, by its constant position before the verb, is clearly distinguished from the object; but the Spanish, almost entirely modelled on the Latin

syntax, having preserved most of its inversions and elliptic constructions, cannot conveniently support such a reduction. The nominative is placed almost constantly after the verb, and not unfrequently after the word which it governs; the personal pronouns are generally omitted; the regimen of the verbs requires a clear distinction of the dative from the accusative case; and the participle absolute, so frequently used, cannot be divested of its ablative case. How, then, could the connexion of different objects be clearly explained by one or two objective cases, as introduced in some Spanish grammars in imitation of the English? The system of declensions, though only distinguished by prepositions, is more consonant to the principles of the Spanish grammar, and more useful to elucidate its syntax.

As the student has seen the variations of the three articles (*page* 13), he will find the declension of the Spanish nouns, both in the singular and plural, by adding the substantives to the masculine or feminine, according to their gender, and the adjectives to the neuter *lo*.

Section II.

Syntax of the Substantive Noun.

The right use of the substantive being immediately connected with the verb, will be better understood by the syntax of the latter, and more fully explained in the last chapter upon Grammatical Construction. I shall therefore mention here only some points in which the Spanish nouns differ from those of the English language.

There are in English two ways of expressing the genitive of the noun; one by means of the preposition *of*, the other by the addition of an *s*, separated by an apostrophe. The former agrees with the Spanish, but the latter must be translated by reversing the order of the two English nouns, and prefixing the nominative of the corresponding article to the first, and the genitive of the same to the second. Ex.—Saint Paul's Cathedral, *la Catedral de San Pablo*; the King's Theatre, *el Teatro del Rey*; man's nature, *la naturaleza del hombre*.

Sometimes the preposition *of* precedes the genitive case in English, and then it must be rendered in Spanish by placing the genitive of the corresponding article before both nouns. Ex.—Two commissioners of the Customs, *dos de los comisionados de la aduana*; three officers of the tenth, *tres oficiales del* (regimiento) *decimo*. And as in similar expressions there is in English a substantive understood, it will be a sufficient rule to say that it must be expressed in Spanish. I called yesterday at Mr. Smith's, *fui ayer á casa del Señor Smith*.

There is, in English, another very frequent manner of expressing the genitive of the noun without any sign whatever; and such expressions must be likewise rendered in Spanish, by inverting the order of the nouns, and prefixing the article to the first, and the particle *de* to the second. Ex.—Somerset House, *la Casa de Somerset*; a school-master, *un maestro de escuela*.

When the first of the two nouns in these expressions specifies things in an indefinite sense, it ought to be put in the singular; as, a silk-merchant, *un mercader de seda*; two wine-merchants, *dos comerciantes de vino*, &c. The reason is, that silk or wine cannot be two, or a dozen; but if the first noun indicates a thing that can be counted, then it ought to be in the plural: as, bookseller, orange-merchant, &c., *mercader de libros, mercader de naranjas*.

Themes.

We saw yesterday Buckingham House, and Kensing-
ver *ayer*
ton Gardens, and in the evening we went to the King's Theatre.

A man's first concern is to avoid the upbraidings of
negocio *evitar*, *remordimiento*
his conscience, and his second the world's censure.
mundo

A mother's tenderness and a father's care are
madre *afecto* *padre* *cuidado*
Nature's gifts for man's advantage.
don *hombre* *ventaja*

In time of public danger, it is every man's duty to
tiempo *peligro* *deber*
withdraw his thoughts in some measure from his pri-
apartar *pensamiento* *medida*
vate interest, and employ part of his time for the
emplear
general welfare.
bien

John, Robert, and Thomas's fortune has been lost
perder
in a money concern.
dinero negocio

The famous canal of Languedoc, in the South of
sud
France, is one hundred miles long; and it opens a
tener *milla largo* *abrir*
communication between the Mediterranean Sea and the
entre *mar*
Atlantic Ocean.

Exercise.

Substantive nouns are the foundation of grammar, and are the most ancient part of speech. When men had got beyond simple interjections, or exclamations of passion, and had begun to communicate their ideas to each other, they would be obliged to assign names to the objects by which they were surrounded. Whichever way he looked, forests and trees would meet the eye of the beholder. To distinguish the trees by separate names would have been endless. Their common qualities, such as springing from a root, and bearing branches and leaves, would suggest a general idea, and a general name. The genus, a *tree*, would afterwards be subdivided into several species, of oak, elm, ash, &c. by experience and observation.—*Blair's Lectures.*

Meaning of Words.—Ancient, *antiguo*; to get beyond, *adelantar*; to begin, *comenzar*; to oblige, *obligar*; to assign, *asignar*; to surround, *rodear*; whichever way, *á cualquier parte*; to look, *mirar*; forest, *bosque*; tree, *arbol*; to meet, *encontrar*; beholder, *espectador*; endless, *sin fin*; to spring,

nacer; root, *raiz*; to bear branches and leaves, *llevar ramas y hojas*; to suggest, *sugerir*; genus, *genero*; afterwards, *despues*; oak, *roble*; elm, *olmo*; ash, *fresno.*

CHAPTER III.

OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Those words which serve to qualify objects are called Adjectives or Adnouns; and they denote not only the properties real or imaginary of the objects, as the *heat of the fire*, the *coolness of the snow*, the *rarity of the air*, the *roundness of the earth*, &c., but they express also the abstract conceptions we form of objects, such as *good*, *bad*, *just*, &c.

Few adjectives in the English language can stand by themselves, because there is no article proper to be prefixed to them for the purpose of limiting the extent of their signification; but in Spanish, by means of a neuter article, all adjectives and even adverbs are rendered substantives, expressing the abstract idea with more energy than any other noun could give. Ex.—*Lo sublime del Cristianismo encanta* (charms) *al hombre religioso. Lo horrendo del crimen hizo estremecer* (made tremble) *al juez. Lo elocuentemente que habló San Pablo hizo temblar á Felix.* The adjectives here give much more vigour to the expression than the substantives *sublimidad* and *horror* would do.

Adjectives may be divided into many classes, but I shall consider them under two denominations, Nominal and Numeral.

Section I.

Of Nominal Adjectives.

Adjectives in English have no variations, no change with respect to gender or number; a man or a woman, all men or all women, may be *good*, *bad*, or *indifferent*: these adjectives always remain the same: while in Spanish, by changing their terminations, for the gender and

number, we have *bueno* a man, *buenos* men, *buena* a woman, *buenas* some women, *indiferente* one particular individual, and *indiferentes* all in general.

Those adjectives to which the neuter article *lo* is given, as they express only individual qualities, can have neither gender nor plural. Ex.—*El justo practica lo bueno, y detesta lo malo;* 'a just man does what is good, and abhors what is bad.' But if the student chooses to give a plural number to these adjectives, he must make use of the feminine noun *cosas* (things), and its corresponding article: *El justo practica las cosas buenas, y detesta las malas;* but this sort of expression is not so elegant as that with the neuter article.

A great number of adjectives in Spanish end in *o*, which is changed into *a* in the feminine. There are a few ending in *a*, chiefly applied to natives of certain countries: as, *Escita*, *Israelita*, *Moscovita*, *Persa*, and these are used both for man and woman. The most numerous class of adjectives end in *e*, and they serve for both genders, except some ending in *ete*, which change the final *e* into *a* for the feminine. Others end in *n* for the masculine, and take an *a* for the feminine. Others end in *or*, which take an *a* final for the feminine. And the rest, ending in *l*, *s*, or *z*, are common to both genders. The plurals of all these adjectives are formed as in the substantives.

These observations will be more clearly illustrated in the following table.

Terminations.	*Singular.*		*Plural.*		
	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
o	astuto	a	os	as	*cunning*
a	Persa	—	as	—	*Persian*
e	alegre	—	es	—	*merry*
ete	pobrete	eta	tes	tas	*wretched*
ior	superior	ra	res	ras	*superior*
l	facil	—	les	—	*easy*
n	valenton	na	nes	nas	*boaster*
or	hablador	ra	res	ras	*prattler*
s	cortes	—	ses	—	*polite*
z	feliz	—	ces	—	*happy*

OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

All adjectives are positive in themselves, because they express an indeterminate quality, without any excess or diminution,—as *grande*, great; *fuerte*, strong; *sabio*, wise: but as there are sometimes occasions to indicate the difference in extent of the same quality between two objects, or to express the quality of one in the highest degree, it became necessary to adopt a manner of expressing that difference. The English, in imitation of the ancient languages, alters the termination of the adjectives of one or two syllables; and thus, by adding *er* or *est* to the positive, the comparative and superlative degrees are so nicely formed, that it is to be regretted that this mode of comparison should not be adopted with all the adjectives. The Spanish, though so closely formed after the construction of the Latin, has not adopted this elegant manner of comparing the properties of objects, and is obliged to prefix the adverbs *mas* or *menos* to form the comparative, and *el mas* or *el menos* to form the superlative, except when the sense is absolute, without reference to another object.

I. *Comparatives.*—There are three sorts of comparison; of *superiority*, of *equality*, and of *inferiority*.

The first is formed in Spanish by placing *mas* (more) before the positive, and *que* (than) after it; whether the nominative of the sentence be before or after the adjective. Ex.—*El hombre es* MAS *fuerte* QUE *la muger. Las mugeres son* MAS *recatadas* QUE *los hombres;* man is stronger than woman. Women are more reserved than men. MAS *agradable es un picaro en sociedad* QUE *un hombre de bien estupido;* a rogue is more pleasing in society than a stupid honest man. MAS *terribles son* QUE *la muerte los placeres que nos privan del honor;* the pleasures which deprive us of honour are more terrible than death.

The second sort of comparison is formed by placing *tan* (as, or so) before the positive, and *como* (as) after it. If there is no adjective in the sentence, the comparison is formed by *tanto, cuanto.* Ex.—*Es* TAN *habil* COMO

honrado. Es TAN *discreta* COMO *hermosa*; she is as prudent as beautiful. *No viven* TAN *felices* COMO *vm. imagina*; they do not live so happy as you imagine. *El la quiere* TANTO CUANTO *ella le aborrece*; he loves her as much as she hates him.

The third manner of comparison is formed by placing *menos* (less) before the positive, and *que* (than) after it. Ex.—*Pedro es* MENOS *rico que Juan.*

There are various modes of making comparisons, which will be more easily learned by attending to the following comparative table.

Table of Comparisons.

More	than	mas	que
as	as	tan	como
as much	as	tanto	como / cuanto
as well	as	tan bien	como
so	as	tan	como
less	than	menos	que
no more	than	no mas	de
not so much	as	no tanto	como / que
the more	the more	cuanto mas	tanto mas
the more	the less	cuanto mas	tanto menos
the more	the worse	cuanto mas	tanto peor
the less	the better	cuanto menos	tanto mejor
more	than what	mas	de lo que

The student will observe, 1st, That the adjectives *mayor, menor, mejor, peor, mas,* and *menos,* are not always followed by the conjunction *que*; but that very often they have the preposition *de* and one of the articles prefixed,—commonly the neuter *lo,* in order to avoid the unharmonious repetition of *que—que.* Ex.—*La joven se portó con* MENOS *recato* DE LO *que convenia*; the young lady behaved herself with less circumspection than was proper. *Los sufrimientos de los esclavos son* MENORES DE LO *que piensan los libres*; the sufferings of slaves are less than free people think.

2ndly, It should be also observed that the degrees of comparison may be expressed in Spanish without sub-

joining the conjunction *que* to the adjectives *mejor* or *tanto*, or to the adverbs *mas* or *menos*, employing these words in an absolute sense. Ex.—*Es muy util y agradable poseer muchas riquezas, pero tener una conciencia limpia lo es mas*; it is useful and pleasant to possess many riches, but to have a clear conscience is still more so.

Comparative Examples.

La monarquia Española en el reinado de Carlos V. era mas poderosa que ninguna otra en Europa.	*The Spanish monarchy in the reign of Charles V. was more powerful than any other in Europe.*
Los ministros de Guillelmo IV. han hecho *tantas* reformas *cuantas* han podido hacer.	*The ministers of William IV. have made* as many *reforms* as *they have been able to do.*
La verdad no hace *tanto* bien en el mundo, *como* hace mal su apariencia.	*Truth does not do* so much *good in the world*, as *its appearance does harm.*

Themes.

There is nothing, says Plato, so delightful as the
hay *nada* *decir* *agradable*

hearing or speaking the truth.
oir *hablar* *verdad.*

Men are not so much pleased with what is right,
hombre *complacer* *justo*

as disgusted at what is wrong.
disgustar *injusto.*

Men resemble God in nothing so much as in doing
asemejarse Dios *nada* *hacer*

good to their fellow-creatures.
bien *projimo.*

Exercise.

As knowledge without justice ought to be called cunning rather than wisdom, so a mind prepared to meet

danger, if excited by its own eagerness, and not the public good, deserves the name of audacity rather than of courage.

There is no crime more infamous than the violation of truth.

It is apparent that men can be social beings no longer than they believe each other.

Some men are as sparing, as if they were to live here for ever; while others are as prodigal, as if they were to die instantly.

Meaning of Words.—Life, *vida*; pleasure, *placer*; friendship, *amistad*; knowledge, *conocimiento*; ought, *debe*; to call, *llamar*; cunning, *astucia*; mind, *mente*; to meet, *arrostrar*; eagerness, *ahinco*; to deserve, *merecer*; apparent, *manifiesto*; being, *criatura*; longer, *mas tiempo*; to believe, *creer*; sparing, *mezquino*; to die, *morir*.

II. *Superlatives.*—There are in Spanish two sorts of superlatives, the *relative* and the *absolute*.

1. The *relative* superlative expresses a quality in a very high degree, but always in reference to other objects. It is formed as in English. Ex.—*La máquina de vapor es la mas ingeniosa, la mas util, y la mas potente de cuantas ha inventado el hombre*; the steam-engine is the most ingenious, the most useful, and the most powerful invention of man.

The comparative adjectives *mayor*, *menor*, *mejor*, and *peor*, become superlatives when the article is prefixed to them. Ex.—*Londres es la mayor capital de todas las naciones. Cadiz es el puerto mejor situado para el comercio de Europa. El clima de Sierra Leona es el peor del mundo, y el pais menor en importancia.* It is not necessary that the article should be expressed, as may be seen in the two last examples, where it is understood, and sufficiently indicated by that of the substantive.

2. The *absolute* superlative expresses the quality in the highest degree, without any comparison, and therefore does not admit the article. It is formed in two ways: 1st, as in English, by putting the particle *muy*, 'very,' before the positive; as, *muy prolijo y con todo muy claro*; very minute, and withal very clear. 2ndly, By

changing the last vowel of the positive in *ísimo* or *ísima*, according to the gender. It is the pure superlative of the Latin, and very congenial to the majesty of the Spanish language. Ex.—*O Poderosísimo Dios! tu altísima providencia preserva la hermosísima fabrica de los cielos.*

In Spanish not only the adjectives, but the adverbs also are made superlatives, which renders the language exuberant even to a fault. A few examples will show these formations better than any explanation.

Adjective.	*Adverb.*	*Superlative.*
atento	atentamente	1. muy atentamente 2. lo mas atentamente 3. atentisimamente
elegante	elegantemente	1. muy elegantemente 2. lo mas elegantemente 3. elegantisimamente

I should observe that these altisonant words are chiefly used by the ignorant, who supply their want of conception by such pompous terminations. It is more elegant to say, *con la mayor atencion, con la mayor elegancia*; or at most, *con muchísima atencion, con muchísima elegancia.*

Muchísimo, 'too much by far,' *poquisimo*, 'too little,' and *mínimo*, 'the smallest,' cannot end in *mente*. *Mínimo* admits the word *mas*, and it gives the utmost idea of parvity. Ex.—*Los sacerdotes católicos no pueden comer, antes de celebrar la misa, el* MAS MI'NIMO *pedacito de pan, ni beber una gota de agua*; the catholic priests cannot eat the *smallest imaginable* piece of bread before they say mass, nor drink a drop of water.

I have shown the degrees of comparison in adjectives and adverbs, and have now to add, that even the substantives in Spanish are susceptible of these modifications, and are thus rendered more expressive. Ex.—*Hombre*, man; *mas hombre*, a superior man; *muy hombre*, a very superior man, capable of performing any exploit. *Caballero*, gentleman; *mas caballero*, more of a gentleman; *muy caballero*, an accomplished gentleman, inca-

pable of a bad action. Ex.—*El Duque de Wellington se mostró en Waterloo* MAS GENERAL *que Napoleon;* the Duke of Wellington showed at Waterloo more of the talents of a general than Napoleon.

The student will observe, that in the comparative and superlative expressions of the Spanish language the article is not repeated,—contrary to the English custom. Ex.—

Operations *the* most wisely combined, sometimes produce no good.	Las operaciones mas sabiamente combinadas, á veces no producen bien alguno.
Opinions *the* most generally received do not satisfy many.	Las opiniones mas generalmente recibidas no satisfacen á muchos.

The reason for this difference, if there is any, appears to be that the English substantives are without the article; otherwise it would not be expressed again.

The following comparatives and superlatives are irregular.

Alto	*high*	superior	supremo.
bajo	*low*	inferior	ínfimo.
bueno	*good*	mejor	óptimo.
grande	*great*	mayor	máximo.
malo	*bad*	peor	pésimo.
pequeño	*small*	menor	mínimo.
mucho	*much*	mas	muchísimo.
poco	*little*	menos	poquísimo.

The following adjectives undergo a little variation in the superlative and their adverbs.

	Superlatives.	*Adverbs.*
Bueno	bonísimo	bonisimamente.
célebre	celebérrimo	celeberrimamente.
cruel	acérrimo	acerrimamente.
fuerte	fortísimo	fortisimamente.
integro	integérrimo	integerrimamente.
nuevo	novísimo	novisimamente.
sabio	sapientísimo	sapientisimamente.
sacro	sacratísimo	sacratisimamente
salubre	salubérrimo	saluberrimamente.

Themes.

There is, I know not how, in the minds of men a
saber *mente*
certain presage, as it were, of a future existence; and
cierto presagio, *como*
this takes the deepest root, and is most discoverable,
profundo raiz *descubrible*
in the greatest genius and most exalted soul.
genio *exaltar alma.*

The regular tenor of a virtuous and pious life will
vendrá
prove the best preparation for immortality, for old age,
á ser *vejez*
and death.
muerte.

If the extent of the human view could comprehend
estension *vista* *penetrar*
the whole frame of the universe, I believe it would be
todo fabrica *creer*
found invariably true, that Providence has given that
hallar *verdadero* *dar*
in the greatest plenty, which the condition of life
abundancia *vida*
makes of the greatest use.
hacer *uso.*

Section III.

Numeral Adjectives.

The use of these words is either to indicate an exact number of objects, as one, five, ten, &c., when they are called Cardinals; or to express their numerical order with respect to each other, as the first, the fifth, the tenth, &c., and then they are called Ordinals.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1 Uno.	3 tres.
2 dos.	4 cuatro.

5 cinco.	30 treinta.
6 seis.	40 cuarenta.
7 siete.	50 cincuenta.
8 ocho.	60 sesenta.
9 nueve.	70 setenta.
10 diez.	80 ochenta.
11 once.	90 noventa.
12 doce.	100 ciento.
13 trece.	200 docientos.
14 catorce.	300 trecientos.
15 quince.	400 cuatrocientos.
16 diez y seis.	500 quinientos.
17 diez y siete.	600 seiscientos.
18 diez y ocho.	700 setecientos.
19 diez y nueve.	800 ochocientos.
20 veinte.	900 novecientos.
21 veinte y uno. &c.	1000 mil.

Obs.—*Uno* has a feminine termination, *una*: and it has a plural when used as a substantive; as, *los unos y los otros; unas y otras; unos libros*, some books; *unas plumas*, some pens.

Uno, as an indefinite article, loses the *o*; as has been said at p. 16. So likewise when used as an adjective, p. 38.

Ciento loses the last syllable before all substantives, and has no feminine termination in the singular; but it has a plural for both genders,—*docientos, docientas*, &c.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

I. Primero.	XVI. décimo sesto.
II. segundo.	XVII. décimo septimo.
III. tercero.	XVIII. décimo octavo.
IIII. cuarto.	XVIIII. décimo nono.
V. quinto.	XX. vigésimo.
VI. sesto.	XXI. vigésimo primo. &c.
VII. séptimo.	XXX. trigésimo.
VIII. octavo.	XXXX. cuadragésimo.
VIIII. nono *or* noveno.	L. quincuagésimo.
X. décimo.	LX. sesagésimo.
XI. undécimo.	LXX. septuagésimo.
XII. duodécimo.	LXXX. octogésimo.
XIII. decimo tercio.	LXXXX. nonagésimo.
XIIII. decimo cuarto.	C. céntesimo.
XV. decimo quinto.	

Obs. 1.—All these numbers have a feminine termination, both in the singular and the plural; but Spaniards very seldom make use of them above *décimo*, the tenth; except for Sundays in the church service: thus we say *el Rey Carlos Doce, Luis Catorce, el Papa Juan Veinte y dos*, &c.

Obs. 2.—The days of the month are cardinal, except the first: *el primero, el dos, el tres*, &c. *de Enero* (January).

The proportional numbers are expressed by the ordinals, as in English, but in the Spanish both have masculine and feminine terminations: un *tercio*, or una *tercia*, a third; un *cuarto*, or una *cuarta*, a fourth; cinco *octavos* or *octavas*, five-eighths, &c.

The distributives differ from the English in the preposition. The English *by* is rendered *a* in Spanish; as, 'one *by* one,' *uno á uno*; 'two *by* two,' *dos á dos*, &c.

In mentioning the hours of the day, Spaniards use the feminine article before the number, because the word *hora*, hour, is understood; *la una, las dos, las tres y cuarto*, a quarter after three; *las cuatro y media*, half-past four; *las cinco menos cuarto*, a quarter to five; *las seis en punto*, exactly six o'clock, &c.

Section IV.

Syntax of the Adjectives.

The adjective in English is always placed before the substantive, but in Spanish there is no fixed rule for its place; the taste of the speaker, or the nature of the discourse being very often the only guide on this subject. In familiar style the adjective is more generally placed after the substantive, but it has more energy when placed before the substantive in rhetorical compositions. Some rules, however, may be given for the direction of the student.

1. Those adjectives that may be employed by themselves, as if they were substantives, must be placed after the noun; such as *ciego* blind, *mudo* dumb, *casado* married, &c. The reason for this rule is, that these

adjectives, having in themselves a complete meaning, would, if placed before the substantive, sound in the ear as substantives, fixing by their termination the idea of their signification; but in English no ambiguity of this sort can occur, because the adjectives are deprived both of gender and number. The word *blind* in English presents no object; and to give the idea, a substantive must be expressed,—a blind man, or woman; but in Spanish, *ciego* means a blind man, *ciega* a blind woman, *ciegos* blind men, and *ciegas* blind women. For this reason, to say in Spanish *un ciego hombre*, or *una ciega muger*, would be as intolerable to a Spaniard, as a *widower man*, or *widow woman* would be to an English ear.

2. When an adjective denotes the characteristic quality of a person, or when it is accompanied by a substantive which has a regimen, it ought to be placed before the noun with its corresponding article. Ex.—*El ambicioso Alejandro*; *el invencible Nelson*; *la desgraciada Maria Stuart*; *el incomparable autor del Don Quijote*, &c.

Concordance of the Adjective.—If there are two substantives in the singular, one masculine, and the other feminine, with one adjective, the latter ought to agree with the masculine in gender. Ex.—*El rey y la reina son igualmente piadosos;* the king and the queen are equally pious. *La muger y el marido son ambos zelosos;* the wife and the husband are both jealous. But if both substantives are in the plural, the adjective ought to agree with the nearest. Ex.—*Los vivas y las aclamaciones dadas al vencedor eran sinceras;* the shouts of applause given to the conqueror were sincere. *Muchas damas y caballeros estaban sentados á la mesa;* many ladies and gentlemen were sitting at the table. *Los vinos y las frutas eran esquisitas;* the wines and fruits were exquisite.

The same might be said, though one substantive be in the singular, and the other in the plural; but in this case the agreement of the adjective produces a sound somewhat inharmonious; as, *los hermanos y la hermana eran hermosos;* the brothers and the sister were beau-

tiful. *Las hermanas y el hermano vivian contentos;* the sisters and the brother were happy, &c. Two methods of avoiding this dissonance are proposed by the Spanish Academy: 1st, To make use of an adjective among the many ending in *e*, which are of both genders; as, *Los hermanos y la hermana eran elegantes*; *las hermanas y el hermano vivian felices*, &c. 2ndly, If no adjective in *e* can express well the quality of both substantives, two adjectives may be used, and with more elegance; as, *Los hermanos eran hermosos y la hermana linda* (pretty); *las hermanas vivian contentas y el hermano no menos dichoso* (happy). Here I have made use of the same example in all its variations, to make the rules appear with more clearness.

Obs. 1.—The adjectives *uno, alguno, ninguno, bueno, malo, primero, tercero y postrero*, when immediately followed by a substantive, lose the final *o* in the singular: as, *el primer año*, the first year; *el tercer mes*, the third month; *el postrer dia*, the last day. And if we wanted to say, that the first and the second parliament in the reign of William IV. have been very important, *el primero y segundo parlamento en el reinado de Guillelmo IV. han sido muy importantes*, the adjective *primero* does not lose the *o*, because it is not immediately followed by the substantive *parlamento*.

2. GRANDE. This adjective sometimes loses the last syllable, and sometimes not. When it precedes a word beginning with a vowel or *h*, the whole word is preserved: as, *grande idea*, *grande occurrencia*, *grande ultraje* (outrage), *grande hazaña* (exploit). It is likewise preserved when it conveys the idea of quantity or dimension: as, *un grande rio* a large river, *un grande coche* a large coach, &c.; but in these expressions it would be better to place the adjective after the substantive.

3. SANTO. When this adjective is followed by the name of a Saint it loses the last syllable, as San Pedro, San Pablo, &c. There are, however, four names before which the whole word is preserved by constant usage; these are, *Domingo*, *Tomás*, *Tomé* and *Toribio*.

Section IV.

Of Augmentatives and Diminutives.

In the English language there are no augmentatives or diminutives, by which the Spanish is so particularly distinguished. They are easily formed, in most substantives and adjectives, by an occasional change of termination; and by this simple contrivance the Spaniards are enabled to express with great precision and singular grace, not only the difference between objects, but every kind of magnitude and smallness, of goodness and badness; so that deformity, fierceness, contempt, indifference, ridiculousness,—in short, every quality, in every degree, that an object may possess, is in Spanish expressed by a suitable modification of its name. And this richness of expression is not limited to simple augmentatives and diminutives; there are also augmentatives of augmentatives, and diminutives of diminutives, each of which surpasses the signification of the preceding one, to such an exuberant extent, that there are several nouns, which are susceptible of twelve augmentatives and as many diminutives, some of which may have, besides the proper meaning, a figurative sense; so that every shadow of merit or of demerit, which the mind is capable of conceiving, may be expressed in Spanish by a single word.

The various terminations used for the formation of these emphatic words are very numerous; the manner of applying them depends chiefly on the good taste of the speaker; and even the sense in which they ought to be taken often depends on the subject of the discourse; —circumstances that render it difficult to explain this subject fully in a grammar. Some rules, however, will give the student an idea of this class of words.

AUGMENTATIVES.

There are six modifications for the augmentatives. Simple words may be augmented by adding to them any of the following terminations,—*on*, *ote*, *eton*, *azo*, *acho*, *arron* for the masculine, and *ona*, *ota*, *etona*, *aza*, *acha*,

arrona for the feminine. *On* and *azo* generally give the idea of an advantageous corpulence, or grandeur of sentiment. *Acho* and *ote* indicate a ridiculously large appearance. *Eton* and *arron* express monstrosity, or excess.

The ultra-augmentatives are formed from the augmentatives ending in *on*, by adding to them the terminations *azo*, *ote* or *acho*; or from the augmentatives ending in *acho*, by the addition of an *n*. All these augmentatives are used for the masculine gender; and by changing the last vowel into *a*, or adding *a* to the last consonant, they become feminine.

DIMINUTIVES.

There are eight terminations for the diminutives: *ico*, *ito*, *illo*, *uelo*, *ejo*, *ete*, *ino*, *ajo*, for the masculine; and by changing the last vowel into *a*, they become feminine. *Ico* and *ito* express friendship and tenderness, more particularly the latter. *Illo* is applied to words of jesting, scorn, or derision; but when formed from proper names, they are tender and graceful expressions. *Uelo* always denotes contempt, and even disgust, because it expresses not only despicable exterior qualities, but immorality also. *Ino* indicates extreme littleness. *Ejo* gives the idea of a small size in the individual. *Ete* and *ajo* qualify a thing as pitiful or useless.

The ultra-diminutives are formed from the diminutives in *ico* and *ito*, by changing these terminations into *iquillo*, *iquito* or *icuelo*. All these terminations are of the masculine gender; and by changing the final *o* into *a*, they become feminine.

Thus it may be said, that most nouns in Spanish are capable of twenty, thirty, and even forty different meanings, by an occasional change in their termination.

It should be observed that many of these augmentatives are in constant use; others are less frequently, and some seldom used; but all of them in peculiar circumstances may be emphatically applied in discourse.

The following display will show both the formation and meaning of these Spanish words better than rules and explanation.

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

Hombre, (*subst.*)	Man.
hombr*on*,	a large man.
hombr*azo*,	a very large man.
hombr*acho*,	a square thick man.
hombr*onazo*,	a huge vulgar man.
Hombre,	Man.
hombre*cico*,	a little man.
hombre*cito*,	a very little man.
hombre*cillo*,	a puny little fellow.
hombre*zuelo*,	a despicable little man.

Muger,	Woman.
muger*ona*,	a lusty woman.
muger*aza*,	a very large woman.
muger*acha*,	a large coarse woman.
muger*onaza*,	an immensely large woman.
muger*onacha*,	a monstrously vulgar woman.
Muger,	Woman.
muger*cica*,	a little woman.
muger*cita*,	a pretty little woman.
muger*cilla*,	a contemptible woman.
muger*zuela*,	an abandoned woman.

Bobo, (*adj.*)	Dunce.
bob*on*,	a great dolt.
bob*azo*,	a blockhead.
bob*ote*,	a great fool.
bob*arron*,	a very great fool.
bob*alicon*,	a simpleton.
bob*onazo*,	a consummate fool.
Bobo,	Dunce.
bob*ito*,	a little innocent fool.
bob*illo*,	a little dolt.
bob*uelo*,	a stupid little fellow.
bob*oncillo*,	a little simpleton.
bob*onzuelo*,	a very dull child.

Grande, (*adj.*)	Large.
grand*on*,	very large.
grand*illon*,	excessively large.
grand*azo*,	monstrously large.
Chic*o*,	Little.
chiq*uito*,	very little.
chiq*uitico*,	a little boy.
chic*uelo*,	a very little boy.
chiq*uillo*,	*These diminutives do not admit of being translated into English.*
chiq*uetillo*,	
chiq*uetuelo*,	
chiq*uirritico*,	
chiq*uirritillo*,	
chiq*uirritin*,	

Section V.

Analogy of Words.

After the analysis and syntax of the noun, I think it will be useful to give the student here some rules of analogy, to enable him to find a great number of substantives and adjectives by a slight alteration in the termination of the corresponding English words.

There are some substantives and adjectives, the terminations of which are common to both languages.

1. Adjectives ending in *able*, *ible*, *oble*, and *uble*, are the same in both languages. Ex.—*laudable*, *sensible*, *noble*, *soluble*, &c.

2. All words ending in *ion* are the same, the preceding *t* in some being changed into *c*, according to the Spanish orthography. Ex.—*accion*, *adopcion*, *efusion*, *delusion*, &c.

3. All adjectives ending in *ular* are exactly the same in both languages. Ex.—*auricular*, *muscular*, *singular*, &c.

4. Most of the substantives and adjectives ending in *al* are the same in both languages. Ex.—*animal*, *colosal*, *general*, &c.

There are others which require some slight change in their terminations, which are easily learned by practice. The difference will appear at one view in the following table.

Table of Analogy.

Engl.	*Span.*	
acle	aculo	oracle, obstacle, tabernacle, spectacle.
an	ano	human, ocean, roman, meridian.
ant	ante	constant, distant, flagrant, quadrant.
ate	ado	delicate, inconsiderate, prelate, senate, moderate.
dy	dia	comedy, custody, prosody, tragedy, parody.
ent	ente	agent, eloquent, consistent, provident, prudent.
ic	ico	caustic, domestic, magic, public, rustic.
icle	iculo	article, vehicle.
id	ido	acid, rapid, splendid, stupid, timid.
ism	ismo	atheism, criticism, heroism, syllogism, deism.
ist	ista	artist, mechanist, organist, psalmist.
ive	ivo	active, lucrative, motive, passive, positive.
gy	gia	analogy, chronology, elegy, energy, theology.
nce	ncia	elegance, essence, patience, residence, violence.
ncy	ncia	advertency, constancy, frequency, transparency.
ony	onio	cacophony, matrimony, parsimony, testimony.
ry	rio	necessary, allegory, oratory, repository, salary.
our	or	colour, favour, honour, vapour.
ous	oso	ambitious, curious, odious, prodigious.
tude	tud	lassitude, multitude, similitude, rectitude.
ty	dad	activity, charity, liberality, piety.
ure	ura	censure, figure, lecture, manufacture.

And most of the adverbs ending in

ly	mente	absurdly, obscurely, prudently, positively.

When these and similar words are rendered into Spanish, the gender, and some slight alteration in the orthography, must be attended to.

There are many other adjectives, which being of a different etymology, have no resemblance whatever, and must be learned by the student. A table of them will be found in the Appendix.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE PRONOUNS.

THE pronouns have been introduced into languages to avoid the repetition of the nouns. Grammarians have

divided pronouns into more or fewer classes. There are those who consider some of the personal pronouns as *conjunctive*, because they are always joined to verbs; others exclude some of the demonstratives, as not having the character of pronouns, and class them as pronominal adjectives; while others, finding that the pronouns have several significations, divide them into as many classes as they have different applications; hence they are called determinate and indeterminate, absolute and correlative, conjunctive, interrogative, derivative, distributive, improper; adverbs of identity and of generality, of diversity, of quantity, of quality, and many other denominations equally applicable to nouns, participles, adverbs and prepositions; and if we were to adhere to these and similar grammatical subtilties, there would be scarcely a dozen words in a language that would not require some particular classification. Such a multiplicity of technical names, ingenious definitions, and arbitrary divisions, more fit for philological disputes than for the acquisition of a foreign language, have rendered this part of speech an intricate subject. I shall treat here of the pronouns under the four well-known classes of Personals, Demonstratives, Possessives, and Relatives; disposing them in all their common variations, and with their respective significations, in order that the student may more easily learn them by comparison with the same in English.

Section I.

Analysis of the Personal Pronouns.

These pronouns denote three persons,—the individual who speaks, the one spoken to, and the one spoken of; and they may be either in the singular or the plural. The difference between the Spanish and the English personal pronouns chiefly consists in this,—that the former are susceptible of feminine terminations in the plural, which are not admitted in the latter, as appears in the following table.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Yo,	*I.*	Nosotros *or* nosotras,	*we.*
Tu,	*thou.*	Vosotros *or* vosotras,	*you.*
El,	*he.*	Ellos *or* ellas,	*they.*
Ella,	*she.*		

The variation of these pronouns in cases is in the following manner.

First Person.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
N.	Yo,	*I.*	Nosotros,	*we.*
G.	de mí,	*of me.*	de nosotros,	*of us.*
D.	á *or* para mí, me,	*to me.*	á *or* para nosotros, nos,	*to us.*
Ac.	me, á mí,	*me.*	nos, á nosotros,	*us.*
Ab.	por mí,	*by me.*	por nosotros,	*by us.*

Second Person.

N.	Tu,	*thou.*	Vosotros,	*you.*
G.	de tí,	*of thee.*	de vosotros,	*of you.*
D.	á *or* para tí, te,	*to thee.*	á *or* para vosotros, os,	*to you.*
Ac.	te, á tí,	*thee.*	os, á vosotros,	*you.*
Ab.	por tí,	*by thee.*	por vosotros,	*by you.*

Third Person Masculine.

N.	El,	*he.*	Ellos,	*they.*
G.	de él,	*of him.*	de ellos,	*of them.*
D.	á él, le,	*to him.*	á *or* para ellos, les,	*to them.*
Ac.	le, á él,	*him.*	los, á ellos,	*them.*
Ab.	por él,	*by him.*	por ellos,	*by them.*

Third Person Feminine.

N.	Ella,	*she.*	Ellas,	*they.*
G.	de ella,	*of her.*	de ellas,	*of them.*
D.	á *or* para ella, le,	*to her.*	á *or* para ellas, les,	*to them.*
Ac.	la, á ella,	*her.*	las, á ellas,	*them.*
Ab.	por ella,	*by her.*	por ellas,	*by them.*

Neuter.		*Reflective.*
N. ello,	*it.*	N.
G. de ello,	*of it.*	G. de sí.
D. á ello,	*to it.*	D. á *or* para sí, se.
Ac. lo,	*it.*	Ac. se, á sí.
Ab. con ello,	*with it.*	Ab. por si.

By the preceding table the student will perceive the difference in the declension of the Spanish and English personal pronouns. In English there is but one word for the dative and accusative cases, and that word serves for the masculine, the feminine plural, and for the neuter. It is indeed a great simplicity; but by lessening the terminations of the cases, the language is deprived of more harmony; and it is for the sake of increasing the sound, that the Spaniards, after the Romans, have given to these pronouns a dative case of a different termination from the accusative, and both with generical terminations. The datives *á mi*, *á ti*, *á él*, *á ella*, *á nosotros*, *á vosotros*, *á ellos*, *á si*, correspond to *mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *sibi* in Latin; and the accusatives *me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, *se*, *nos*, *vos*, *los*, *las*, *ellos*, *ellas*, are the same as in Latin, except the change of *e* for *i* in the last two. This observation proves, that though in the English grammar all the cases besides the nominative may be simply called the objective case, in Spanish the dative must be expressly distinguished from the accusative, as the rules of construction are grounded upon this distinction. But there is some difficulty in distinguishing the dative case of the third person from the accusative, in both genders and numbers, on account of their similitude; and to avoid mistaking one for the other, the student will be guided by the following rule, given by the Spanish Academy.

If the action or signification of the verb terminates in the pronoun of the third person, this will be in the accusative,—*le* for the masculine, and *la* for the feminine singular; *los* for the masculine, and *las* for the feminine plural; but if the action or signification of the verb terminates in other parts of speech, the pronoun will be in the dative case,—*le* for the singular, and *les* for the plural, of both genders. Ex.—

El alguacil persiguió á un ladron, *le* prendio, y *le* llevó al oficio de la policia. (*a*)	*The policeman pursued a thief, caught* him, *and carried* him *to the police-office.*

El juez *le* tomó declaracion, y *le* mandó poner en libertad. (*b*)

The magistrate examined him, *and discharged* him.

La patrulla siguió á dos desertores, *los* alcanzó, y *los* trajo al cuartel. (*a*)

The patrol followed two deserters, overtook them, *and brought* them *to the barracks.*

El comandante *les* tomó la declaracion, y *les* notificó la sentencia. (*b*)

The commanding officer tried them, *and read* to them *the sentence of the court.*

El ama acusó á *la* criada de haber*la* robado, (*a*) pero siendo una equivocacion, *le* pidió perdon, y *le* hizo un presente. (*b*)

The mistress accused the maid-servant of theft, but there being a mistake, (*the mistress*) *asked* her *pardon, and made a present* to her.

El barquero tomó dos mugeres, *las* embarcó, y *las* llevó á la otra parte del rio; (*a*) *les* dió el numero de su barca, y *les* prometió esperar hasta que volviesen. (*b*)

The waterman took two ladies, placed them *in his boat, and carried* them *to the other bank of the river; he gave* them *his number, and promised* them *to wait until they should return.*

In all the expressions (*a*) the pronoun is in the accusative, because the action of the verbs falls directly on the persons; but in the expressions (*b*) the pronoun is in the dative, because the meaning of the verbs falls on the examination, trial, &c.

Many of the Spanish classics have used *lo* for *le* in the accusative masculine singular, but the pronoun *lo* has been exclusively left for the neuter by the Spanish Academy.

The same rule may be applied to the pronouns of the first and second persons, and to the reflective; *me, te, se,* singular, and *nos, os,* plural: for instance, in these phrases,—*mi deudor* me *ha pagado, tu hermano* te *escribe esa carta, el niño* se *ha dado un golpe en la cabeza,* 'the child has hurt his head,'—the pronouns are in the dative case, because the direct term of the signification of the verbs is the debt, letter, and blow; but in *nosotros* nos

alabamos, *vosotros* os *atormentais*, *ellos* se *confunden*, and all phrases constructed with neuter verbs employed as reflectives, the pronouns are in the accusative, because the action of the verbs terminates in them.

Lastly; the reflective pronoun *se* is generally used in Spanish to supply the passive voice of the verbs. Ex.—

La gramatica *se* estudia, para hablar con pureza y propiedad; pero *se* debe añadir la leccion de los autores clasicos.	*Grammar is learned in order to speak properly and with purity; but the reading of classic authors must be added.*

The pronoun *se*, either before or after the verb, denotes the passive voice, because grammar does not learn itself, nor the reading of classics add itself.

The reflected sense of the English pronouns is expressed by adding to the possessive, *self* for the singular, and *selves* for the plural, of all genders; but in Spanish it is to the personal that *mismo* and *misma* are added, according to the gender and number, as the student will find by declining *yo*, *tu*, *el*, *ella*, and *si*, through all their cases, singular and plural, with the addition of the pronoun *mismo* or *misma*; *yo mismo*, &c., *tu mismo*, *el mismo*, *ella misma*, *de si mismo*, &c.

The neuter pronoun *ello* (it) is used in Spanish to give more force to the expression. Ex.—*Ello es asi*, it is so indeed; *ello era verdad*, the thing was really so. Its more frequent use is in the accusative *lo*, when it always corresponds with the English objective case *it*.

The greatest difficulty that these Spanish pronouns present to the English scholar is the frequent association of *me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, *lo*, *se*, *les*, *las*, *los*; but the following table will exhibit in a clear way all these occasional combinations.

	In the Singular.	*In the Plural.*
M.	me le, *him to me.*	nos le, *him to us.*
F.	me la, *her to me.*	nos la, *her to us.*
N.	me lo, *it to me.*	nos lo, *it to us.*

M.	te	le,	*him to thee.*	os le,	*him to you.*
F.	te	la,	*her to thee.*	os la,	*her to you.*
N.	te	lo,	*it to thee.*	os lo,	*it to you.*
M.	se	le,	*him to him.*	se les,	*them to them, him or her.*
F.	se	la,	*her to him.*	se las,	*them to them, him or her.*
N.	se	lo,	*it to him.*	se los,	*them to them.*

And if, instead of the singular *it*, there should be the plural *them*, *le*, *la*, *lo* become plural too.

M.	me	les,	*them to me.*	nos les,	*them to us.*
F.	me	las,		nos las,	
N.	me	los,		nos los,	
M.	te	les,	*them to thee.*	os les,	*them to you.*
F.	te	las,		os las,	
N.	te	los,		os los,	

The student will perceive in the preceding table that the two Spanish pronouns are separate; and so they must be before the verb in all tenses, except in the infinitive, in the imperative, and with the gerund, when they are affixed to the verb, making a single word, although the coalition of three pronouns may occur.

Comparative Examples.

El dueño *me le* vendió.	*The owner sold* it *to* me.
El padre *se la* prometió.	*The father promised* her *to* him.
Me place que *os los* lleveis.	*I approve you should take* them *with* you.
Ella *te lo* contará todo.	*She will relate* it *all to* you.
El viene á entregar*mele*.	*He comes to deliver* him *to* me.
No quiso mostrar*mela*.	*He did not like to show* her *to* me.
Voy á presentar*tele*.	*I go to present* him *to* you.
Rehusa dar*tela*.	*He refuses to give* her *to* you.
No quiero contar*telo*.	*I do not choose to tell* it *to* you.
Habiendo*melas* pedido.	*Having begged* me *for* them.
Mandó llevar*selos*.	*He ordered to take* them *to* him.
Vino á traer*sela*.	*He came to bring* her *to* him.
Estoy pronto á decir*selo*.	*I am ready to tell* it *to* him.
El pan nuestro de cada dia da*nosle* hoy.	*Give* us *our daily bread.*
Prometo restituir*osla*.	*I promise to restore* her *to* you.
Envien*seles* todos los libros.	*Let all the books be sent to* them.
Este muchacho es muy picaro, castigue*semele*.	*This lad is a great rogue, let* him *be punished on my account.*

The last coalition of three pronouns occurs but very seldom.

These pronouns at first may appear very perplexing, but by carefully observing the above table, and the comparative examples, a great part of the difficulty will disappear.

Syntax of the Personal Pronouns.

General Observation.—In Spanish the personal pronoun, when nominative, is generally omitted, because the termination of the verb marks the person; *hablo* unequivocally denotes that it is I who speak; and *habló* equally denotes that it is a third person who spoke. In interrogations, however, the pronoun is very often expressed after the verb.

I. When the personal pronoun is in the dative or accusative, it must be expressed either before or after the verb in all tenses, except in the infinitive, imperative, and with the gerund, when the pronoun, as we have just before said, must be affixed to the verb. In conversation and familiar style it stands commonly before, but in oratorical style it has more energy after the verb, and more particularly so at the beginning of a period. Ex.—

Me acuerdo *or* acuerdome.	*I remember.*
Te buscan *or* buscante.	*They inquire for you.*
Le dijeron *or* dijeronle.	*They told him.*
A esto se añade, *or* añadese á esto.	*To this may be added.*
Nos engañaron, *or* engañaronnos.	*They deceived us.*
Me quisiera ir. Quisiera ir*me*. Quisiera*me* ir.	*I should like to go from hence.*
El café *me* gusta. *Me* gusta el café. Gústa*me* el café.	*I like the coffee.*

In the last examples we could not say *el café gústame*, because there is a nominative before the verb.

II. When the pronouns *le*, *la*, represent a substantive, or an adjective taken substantively, they ought to agree

with the noun; but if they represent an adjective, or a substantive taken adjectively, the neuter pronoun *lo* must be used. The second part of this rule is invariable, Ex.—

¿ Es vm. soltero ?—*Lo* soy.	*Are you a single man ?—I am.*
¿ Es vm. casada ?—*Lo* soy.	*Are you a married woman ?—I am.*
¿ Son vms. dueños de este teatro ?—*Lo* somos.	*Are you proprietors of this theatre ?—We are.*

In these and singular questions, the meaning is not about the persons, but about circumstances, which being in abstract require the neuter pronoun. But the first part of this rule, though very grammatical, has been sacrificed to the softness of the sound, and the phrases are now rendered exactly as in English. Ex.—

¿ Es vm. Señor, el gobernador de esta plaza ?—*Yo* soy, *or*, Si, Señor.	*Are you, Sir, the gouvernor of this fortress ?—I am*, or, *Yes, Sir.*
¿ Es aquella Señora la que cantó anoche en la opera ?—Ella es.	*¿ Is that the lady who sung last night at the opera ?—She is.*

III. The pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *si*, cannot be used alone; they must be preceded by a preposition, as in English,—*de mi* of me, *de ti* of thee, *por mi* by me, &c.; but if the ablative is expressed with the preposition *con*, a case of very frequent use in Spanish, the syllable *go* must be affixed to the pronouns, and the three particles form a single word; as *conmigo* with me, *contigo* with thee, *consigo* with him or her. These pronouns correspond to the *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum* of the Latin.

IV. The enunciation of two or three personal pronouns in the same case is permitted in Spanish, giving a greater energy to the discourse; it is a pleonasm,—a redundance of speech almost unavoidable in so hyperbolical a language as the Spanish, and which in a great measure has formed the national character of the people who speak it. Ex.—

El *se* enoja,
el *se* enoja consigo,
el *se* enoja consigo mismo, } *he is angry.*

Ella *se* alaba,
ella *se* alaba á *si*,
ella *se* alaba á *si* misma, } *she praises herself.*

V. The English adverb *so* is often translated in Spanish by the neuter pronoun *lo*. Ex.—

Vm. es independiente, pero yo no *lo* soy. — *You are independent, but I am not so.*

No soy docto, pero estudio mucho para ser*lo* — *I am not learned, but I study much to be so.*

Themes on the foregoing rules.

Acknowledge him as your superior and obey him.
reconocer *obedecer*

She has seen it, and it is most likely she will relate it.
to see, ver, *probable* *contar.*

Let me have your manuscript before you send it to
dar *antes de enviar*

the press, and I promise you to review it impartially.
prensa, *prometer* *revisar*

Do not repeat them continually the same things. Will
repetir *cosa.*

you have resolution enough to tell her not to come
tener *bastante* *decir* *venir*

again to take them (the boys) them (the girls) out?
otra vez llevar *afuera*

Speak not of my debts, except you mean to pay them.
hablar *deuda,* *intentar pagar*

Pronouns used in address.

Spaniards make use of the second person *tu*, thou, in familiar address; as parents, uncles, masters, and aged

people to those who depend on them: husband and wife, brothers, cousins and school-fellows invariably address each other by *tu* thou; and so likewise most of those who have been brought up or are living together, as soldiers, sailors, and servants; so that three fourths of the nation are addressed by *thee* and *thou*. This familiarity is so expressive of friendship and tenderness, that a husband or wife could not endure to be addressed by *vm*. you; a son, if addressed in this formal manner, would consider himself as disowned by his father; and an intimate friend so addressed by another, would take it as a hint that their acquaintance was at an end. These cases excepted, Spaniards make use of the third person singular; but instead of the pronoun *el* or *ella*, he or she, the word *usted* must be used for the singular, and *ustedes* for the plural*. In conversation, *usted* is frequently omitted, and the pronoun *su* or *suyo* yours, used instead, or expressed together to show more respect. Ex.—

Donde está *su* hermano?	*Where is your brother?*
Como está *su* hermana de vm?	*How is your sister?*
Este libro es *mio*, y ese *suyo*.	*This book is mine and that is yours.*
Esta casa es mia y tambien *suya*.	*This house is mine and yours too.*
Yo *se* lo mandaré á *vm*.	*I shall send it to you.*
Vm. puede estar persuadido que *le* serviré siempre como amigo.	*You may rely that I will serve you always as a friend.*
Que han resuelto *vms*. Señores?	*What have you resolved, gentlemen?*
Me parece, Señoras, que *vms*. estan dispuestas á salir.	*I think, ladies, you are ready to go out.*

The student in addressing Spaniards ought always to make use of the third person singular of the verb, and the pronoun *usted*, as it is not likely that he is in any

* Those who may think this manner of address absurd, should observe, that it is precisely the same style adopted by the English in notes of civil inquiry, invitation or compliments.

of the circumstances above mentioned, when *thou* and *thee* are permitted.

The word *usted*, and the plural *ustedes*, are constantly written and printed in abbreviation *vm. vms.*, and formerly *vmd. vmds.* This word is a contraction of *vuestra merced*, your honour; and as this sort of title becomes the nominative, it requires of course the third person, just as in English when Your Majesty, Highness or Lordship is the nominative of the phrase.

It should be observed, that if the person addressed has another superior title, as, *Excelencia, Ilustrisima, Señoria*, &c., the name of the title ought to be used instead of the pronoun *usted*.

Nos and *vos* were formerly used for *nosotros* and *vosotros*, but they are now nearly exploded. The first is found in old proclamations, Nos *el* Rey, Nos *mandamos*, &c.: the practice now is Yo *el* Rey. The second was used in addressing the *Ricohombres*, a title given formerly to the Grandees of Spain; but it is now only used in prayers to God, apostolical briefs, and sometimes in the high style, to give more energy to the apostrophe. Ex.—*O vos, cualquiera que seais, muger mortal, ó por ventura diosa, no os compadecereis de mi desventura?*—(Trad. del Telemacho, lib. i.)

Themes for Exercises in the Personal Pronouns.

Mr. A. and Mr. B. have conferred on *me* great favours, and I am extremely obliged to *them*.

Thy parents have arrived; we must go to see *them*,
padres *llegar* *ir* *ver*
and inform *them* of what has happened.
lo que *acaecer*

The servants have not yet executed *my* orders; let
criado *ejecutar* *orden*
them know that I command *them* to obey *me* without
hacer saber *mandar* *obedecer*
delay.

Some students are in the library; go and tell them
decir

that the others are in the class, and that it is time they
tiempo
should come to meet them.
venir, juntarse con

The last battle Buonaparte fought he lost, and with
batalla *pelear* *perder*
it all his power, glory and liberty.
poder, s.

Who fears to be deceived deserves to be so.
temer *engañar* *merecer*

Exercise.

A certain maid-servant having some money deposited with *her* by two strangers, was charged not to deliver up the deposit till both parties demanded it together. Some time after, *one of them* came in a mourning habit, and pretending the death of *her* comrade, obtained the deposit by that contrivance. Soon after comes the *other*, and demands the money; the poor girl, not being able to make a second restitution, was sued for a breach of trust, and in danger of the halter, when Demosthenes appeared in *her* defence, and accosted the plaintiff thus: "The woman to whom you committed this money is ready to discharge *her* trust, but unless you bring *your* companion along with you, being the condition on which *you yourself* allow the deposit was to be delivered up, she is not answerable to restore it." By this dilemma he saved the life of a hapless wretched woman, and frustrated the conspiracy of a set of rogues, who contrived this scheme with no other view than to have *their* money paid twice *to them.*

Meaning of words.—Maid, *criada*; money, *dinero*; stranger, *desconocido*; to charge, *encargar*; to deliver up, *entregar*; to demand, *pedir*; to come, *venir*; mourning *luto*; comrade, *camarada*; to obtain, *obtener*; contrivance, *artificio*; girl, *moza*; able, *capaz*; to sue, *procesar*; breach of trust, *falta de fidelidad*; danger, *peligro*; halter, *dogal*; to accost, *hablar*; to commit, *confiar*; to bring, *traer*; companion, *compañera*; to allow, *admitir*; answerable, *responsable*; hapless, *desvalido*; wretched, *miserable*; a set, *cuadrilla*; rogue, *pícaro*; to contrive, *trazar*; scheme, *plan*; view, *mira.*

Section II.

Analysis of the Demonstrative Pronouns.

There are in Spanish three pronouns to demonstrate or point out any person or thing; a masculine, a feminine, and a neuter.

Singular.				Plural.		
masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*		*masc.*	*fem.*	
1 Este	esta	esto	*this.*	Estos	estas	*these.*
2 ese	esa	eso	*that.*	esos	esas	*those.*
3 aquel	aquella	aquello		aquellos	aquellas	

From these pronouns three others are formed with the addition of *otro*, other.

Singular.		Plural.	
masc.	*fem.*	*masc.*	*fem.*
1 Estotro	estotra.	Estotros	estotras.
2 esotro	esotra.	esotros	esotras.
3 aquel otro	aquella otra.	aquellos otros	aquellas otras.

Each of these pronouns denotes three distances, both of place and time, with great precision and energy. By the first, *este*, I show a thing nearer to me than to you; by the second, *ese*, I show a thing nearer to you than to me; and by the third, *aquel*, I point out a thing equally distant from both.

These pronouns may also denote three equal distances from both: Ex.—

Este retrato, *esa* miniatura, y *aquel* cuadro, son obras del famoso pintor Lawrence.

This portrait (*in my hands*), *that miniature* (*you are looking at*) *and that picture* (*hung on the wall*) *are works of the famous painter Lawrence.*

Este edificio (donde estamos), *ese* puente (cerca de nosotros), y *aquella* iglesia (que vemos), son tres obras maestras de arquitectura en Londres.

This building (*Somerset House*), *that bridge* (*Waterloo*), *and that church* (*St. Paul's*), *are three masterpieces of architecture in London.*

The same may be said in reference to time: *este* denotes the present, *ese* that just past, and *aquel* that elapsed: Ex.—

Estos tiempos (en que vivimos), *esos* (de que vm. habla), y *aquellos* de que trata la historia antigua, presentan los mismos ejemplos de virtudes y vicios.

These times (*we live in*), *those you speak of, and those recorded in ancient history, present the same instances of virtues and vices.*

Syntax of the Demonstrative Pronouns.

The construction of these pronouns being nearly equal in both languages, I shall only mention here some peculiarities of the Spanish.

1. The neuter pronouns *esto, eso, aquello,* have no plurals, because they cannot supply the place of nouns. Ex.—

Amo mas tu vida y tu salud que la mia propria; sirvate *esto* de regla para no exponer la tuya.

I love your life and health more than my own; let that be a warning to you not to expose your life.

No es *eso* lo que yo quiero decir.

It is not that which I mean.

He olvidado *aquello* que vm. me dijo.

I have forgotten what you told me.

Deja*lo* correr, que *ello* parará.

Let it be so, it will pass away.

2. The articles *el, la, lo,* often take the place of the demonstrative pronouns, giving to the expression both brevity and elegance. Ex.—

He visto la casa en que vm. vive ahora, y *la* que habitó antes.

I have seen the house you now live in, and that *in which you lived before.*

La influencia del lujo se estiende á todas las clases del estado, hasta *la* del labrador mismo.

The generosity of the king extends itself to all classes of the state, even to that *of the labourer.*

Ese libro no se parece á ninguno de *los* que se han publicado hasta ahora.

That book does not resemble any of those *hitherto published.*

Comparative Examples.

Esto que yo te digo, y *aquello* que mi lengua no puede proferir, es lo que me ha reducido á este estado tan abatido.	*That which I tell you, and which my tongue cannot utter, is what has reduced me to this servile state.*
Dichosa edad y siglos dichosos! *aquellos* á quienes los antiguos pusieron nombre de dorados.	*O happy age! which our first parents called the age of gold.*
Los defectos de Enrique IV. de Castilla eran *los* de un hombre amable, y sus virtudes *las* de un hombre grande y de un rey.	*The faults of Henry IV. of Castile were those of an amiable man, and his virtues those of a great man and of a king.*
Aquesto es bueno, convengo en *ello*.	*That is good, I agree to it.*

Themes.

They who raise envy will easily incur censure.
causer *invidia* *incurrir*

That darkness of character where we can see no
oscuridad *ver*
heart,—those foldings or art through which no native
corazon *doblez* *por medio*
affection is allowed to penetrate, present an object
permitir *presentar*
unamiable in every season of life, but particularly odi-
desamable *estacion* *vida*
ous in youth.
juventud

Section III.

Analysis of the Possessive Pronouns.

These pronouns denote the possession, or the right of property to anything. They are three, and are declined with their corresponding articles, *el mio*, m.; *la mia*, f.; *lo mio*, n., in which they differ from the English, which take no article. The formation of languages has

been really capricious: the Spanish has the advantage in the first and second persons, on account of the gender and number; *el mio, los mios, la mia, las mias,* and *lo mio,* are all translated into English by the single word *mine*: but the English has a greater advantage over the Spanish in the gender of the third person; so that *his, her, its,* which mark so distinctly the masculine, the feminine and the neuter, are all three expressed in Spanish by the single word *suyo.*

Again: The possessive pronouns in English agree with the possessor of the thing, which is very natural; while in Spanish they agree with the thing possessed, which is rather preposterous.

The following table of the declension of these pronouns will show their nature, their difference, and their use.

Before Substantives.

Singular.		Plural.	
1 Pers. Mi tio	*my uncle.*	mis tios	*my uncles.*
2 Pers. tu tia	*thy aunt.*	tus tias	*thy aunts.*
3 Pers. su primo	*his cousin.* / *her cousin.*	sus primos	*their cousins.*
su merito	*his merit.* / *her merit.* / *its merit.*	sus meritos	*his merits.* / *her merits.* / *their merits.*

After Substantives expressed.

Singular.

1 Pers. Este libro es mio	*this book is*	*mine.*
esta carta es mia	*this letter is*	
2 Pers. ese papel es tuyo	*that paper is*	*thine.*
esa pluma es tuya	*that pen is*	
3 Pers. aquel sello es suyo	*that seal is his, or hers, or theirs.*	
aquella caja es suya	*that box is his, or hers.*	

Plural.

1 Pers. Estos libros son mios	*these books are*	*mine.*
estas cartas son mias	*these letters are*	

2 Pers. Esos papeles son tuyos — *those papers are*
esas plumas son tuyas — *those pens are* } *thine.*

3 Pers. aquellos sellos son suyos — *those seals are his, or hers, or theirs.*
aquellas cajas son suyas — *those boxes are his, or hers.*

After Substantives understood.

Singular.

1 Pers. *m.* Este es el mio
f. esta es la mia } *this is mine.*
n. esto es lo mio

2 Pers. *m.* ese es el tuyo
f. esa es la tuya } *that is thine.*
n. eso es lo tuyo

3 Pers. *m.* aquel es el suyo — *that is his, or hers, or theirs.*
f. aquella es la suya — *that is his, or hers, or theirs.*

Plural.

1 Pers. *m.* Estos son los mios
f. estas son las mias } *these are mine.*

2 Pers. *m.* esos son los tuyos
esas son las tuyas } *those are thine.*

3 Pers. aquellos son los suyos — *those are his, or hers, or theirs.*

Singular.

1 Pers. *m.* Este es el nuestro
f. esta es la nuestra } *this is ours.*
n. esto es lo nuestro

2 Pers. *m.* ese es el vuestro
f. esa es la vuestra } *that is yours.*
n. eso es lo vuestro

Plural.

1 Pers. *m.* Estos son los nuestros
f. estas son las nuestras } *these are ours.*

2 Pers. *m.* esos son los vuestros
f. esas son las vuestras } *those are yours.*

Syntax of the Possessive Pronouns.

The construction of these pronouns is not dissimilar to the corresponding pronouns in English, except in the difference observed in the preceding table. There are a few expressions in which the Spanish possessive pronoun has a peculiar application, as will appear in the following rules.

I. When any one of the personal pronouns is the nominative of the phrase, either expressed or understood, Spaniards make use of the article instead of the possessive pronoun before the parts of the human body. The reason for this construction is, that the verbs employed being reflective, the possession is expressed without any ambiguity, which is not the case in English. Ex.—I wash the hands, or the head aches, is ambiguous, it not being expressed whose hands or head they are; but *me lavo las manos*, or *le duele la cabeza*, has a complete sense, and the repetition of the same pronoun is tautology. Should, however, any ambiguity occur in the phrase, then the possessive must be used, as in English: Ex.—*Veo hincharse* mis *piernas*, 'I see my legs swell.' If the possessive were not used here, any one might ask, whose legs are those? but if I say *no puedo sufrir* el *dolor de cabeza*, 'I cannot bear my headache,' or *no podia mover* las *manos*, 'he could not move his hands,' the article supposes the possession indicated by the verb.

II. The English particle *own*, expressing property, is generally omitted in Spanish, because the property is fully expressed by the absolute pronoun, *mio* mine, *tuyo* thine, *suyo* his; but in English *own* is expressed, because *my*, *thy*, *her*, are not absolute pronouns. Ex.—

Es culpa *mia.*	*It is my own fault.*
Ella lo compró con dinero *tuyo.*	*She bought it with thy own money.*
Cada uno puede hacer lo que quiera con lo *suyo.*	*Every one has a right to do what he pleases with his own.*
Lo he adquirido por *mi* esfuerzo.	*I have got it by my own effort.*

In the last example, *mio* loses the *o* on account of the subsequent substantive.

III. There are some cases in which the Spanish possessive pronouns become substantives, or rather neuter adjectives, giving a peculiarity to the expression; and this mode of using them is very graceful in the familiar style. Ex.—*Lo mio mio, y lo tuyo de entrambos*; the meaning is, 'What is mine I shall keep for myself, and what is thine we will divide between us two.'

Lo mio y lo tuyo son el origen de todas nuestras discordias; the meaning is, 'What I pretend to be mine, and what you pretend to be your own, is the source of all our quarrels.'

Nos por lo ageno, y el diablo por lo nuestro; the meaning is, 'Avarice makes us take what does not belong to us, and the devil at the end will take all.'

Bien haya quien á los suyos se parece; the meaning is, 'Happy are those who follow the footsteps of their ancestors.'

Se salió con la suya; 'He has put his intention into execution in spite of all opposition.'

IV. The English phrases, 'a countryman of mine,' 'a friend of his,' &c., are rendered in Spanish by simply placing the possessive pronoun after the substantive; *un paisano mio, un amigo tuyo, un criado suyo, un conocido nuestro*, &c.

The same construction is used in addressing persons: *Hijo mio, madre mia, amigos mios; Padre nuestro que estás en los cielos!* 'Our father who art in heaven!'

Comparative Examples.

Para *ti* enreda y trama el gusano hilador la seda; para *ti* lleva hojas y fruta el arbol hermoso; para *ti* fructifica la viña; *tuyo* es el vellon que cria la inocente oveja; *tuya* la leche que da la cabra; el cuero y carne del manso buey es

The silk that the spinning-worm works is for thee; *the luxuriant tree produces leaves and fruit for* thee; *the vine fructifies for* thee; thine *is the fleece that the harmless sheep bears; the milk that the goat yields is* thine; *the*

para *tu* beneficio, y toda la produccion de la tierra beneficio *tuyo* es.	*skin and the flesh of the tame ox is for* thy *use, and all the production of the earth is for* thine *own benefit.*

Exercise.

If you observe and conduct *yourself* by these rules and precepts, Sancho, *your* days will be long upon the face of the earth; *your* fame will be eternal, *your* reward complete, and *your* felicity unutterable: *your* children will be married according to *your* wish; they and *their* descendants will enjoy titles; you shall live in peace and friendship with all mankind; when *your* course of life is run, death will overtake you in a happy and mature old age, and *your* eyes will be shut by the tender and delicate hands of *your* posterity in the third or fourth generation.—Don Quixote, II. 42.

Meaning of words.—To conduct oneself, *portarse*; rule, *regla*; face, *faz*; earth, *tierra*; reward, *premio*; unutterable, *indecible*; to marry, *casarse*; according to, *segun*; to enjoy, *gozar*; title, *titulos*; to live, *vivir*; peace, *paz*; friendship, *beneplácito*; death, *muerte*; to overtake, *alcanzar*; to shut, *cerrar*; hand, *mano*.

Section IV.

Analysis of the Relative Pronouns.

Relative pronouns are those introduced in the discourse to recall the ideas of the persons or things before mentioned. There are four in Spanish,—*que* that, *cual* which, *quien* who, *cuyo* whose.

Que. This pronoun, with the corresponding article, serves for all genders and numbers, and is declined like the nouns.

Cual serves also for all genders, and is declined in the same manner.

Quien serves for both masculine and feminine; it has a plural, *quienes*, but never takes any article.

Cual and *quien*, with the particle *quiera*, form two other pronouns, exactly as the English *who* and *which* with the adverb *soever*.

Cuyo has gender and number; *cuyo, cuyos—cuya, cuyas,* 'whose.' It agrees, not with the person it relates to, but with the thing possessed, as has been said at page 59. Ex.—

El soldado *cuyo* fusil tomamos.
The soldier whose musket we took.

El oficial *cuya* espada tenemos.
The officer whose sword we have.

El capitan *cuyas* charreteras hemos hallado hoy.
The captain whose epaulets we have found today.

El general *cuyos* edecanes encontramos ayer.
The general whose aide-de-camps we met yesterday.

Syntax of the Relative Pronouns.

The construction of these pronouns is generally the same both in English and Spanish; there is, however, some dissimilarity, as may be seen in the following rules.

I. When *cual* and *quien* are without the article, they are not pronouns: their use is only to separate the different parts of the period, giving an indeterminate subject to the action of the verb, when it corresponds to the English *some of them.* Ex.—

Cual es Pedro, tal es Juan.
Such is Peter, so is John.

Tengo muchos libros, cuales en Griego, cuales en Latin, y cuales en Castellano.
I have many books, some Greek, some Latin, and some Spanish.

Cual cual, *or* tal cual.
Very few.

Las damas que estaban con la reina quisieran hacerse todas ojos, porque no les quedase cosa por mirar en Isabela: cual alababa la viveza de sus ojos, cual el color de su rostro; cual la gallardia de su cuerpo, y cual la dulzura de su habla.—Cervantes.
The ladies who were with the queen looked with the utmost attention, that nothing in Isabella should escape their observation: some praised the vivacity of her eyes, others the complexion of her face; some the genteel carriage of her person, and others the sweetness of her voice.

Todo era confusion en la sala: quien pedia vino, quien pedia agua; quien reia, y quien lloraba.	*All was confusion in the parlour: some asked for wine, some asked for water; some laughed, and some cried.*

II. *Who* and *which* are rendered in Spanish by *que* 'that,' whenever the antecedent of these pronouns has been expressed before in the same sentence. Ex.—

El pais de *que* yo hablo.	*The country of which I speak.*
La Señora *que* acaba de llegar.	*The lady who has just arrived.*
La situacion en *que* me hallo.	*The situation in which I find myself.*
El Señor diputado *que* ahora dirije la Camara de los Comunes.	*The Hon. Member who now leads the House of Commons.*

Themes.

No woman is capable of being beautiful, who is not
muger *capaz* *hermosa*

incapable of being false.

Abuse not him in word whom you are resolved
abusar *palabra* *resolver*

to chastise in deed; for to such a wretch the pain of
castigar *realidad* *infeliz* *pena*

the punishment will be sufficient, without the addition
castigo

of reproach.
baldon

There are many truths which every human being
verdad *hombre*

acknowledges and forgets.
reconocer *olvidar*

If the Gods at any time should permit you to
Dios *tiempo* *permitir*

govern the states of your father, love your subjects
governar estado padre amar subdito

as if they were your children.
como hijo

Nature asks only what is necessary, reason wishes only for what is useful, self-love seeks what is agreeable, and ambition covets what is superfluous.

Observations upon some Spanish Pronouns, the construction of which differs from the same in English.

Alguien, alguno. The first has no reference to any substantive,—it corresponds to the English *somebody*. The second has reference to some substantive, mentioned before or understood, corresponding to the English *any*. Ex.—

Alguien ha estado aquí antes.	*Somebody has been here before.*
Mis hijos han ido á pasear al parque; si encontrare vm. á alguno, vuelvase con él.	*My children are gone to walk in the park; if you meet with any one of them, come back with him.*
Los criados están detras de la casa, llamame á alguno.	*The servants are behind the house; call one, and send him to me.*

Nadie, ninguno. These two pronouns have the same application; the first means *nobody*, and the second *not any* or *none*.

Quienquiera and Cualquiera. Both these pronouns mean *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whichever*, or *whichsoever*; but the second more properly means *every body*, *every one*. Ex.—

Quienquiera que mirare con ojos claros este negocio, hallará la verdad.	*Whosoever will look on this subject with clear eyes, will find the truth.*
A cualquiera que te preguntare sobre lo acaecido anoche, le dirás esto, y nada mas.	*Whosoever may ask you about what happened last night, tell him this, and no more.*

Cualquiera dirá lo mismo.

Every one will say the same.

El hombre verdaderamente libre es aquel que, exento de cualquiera temor y de cualquier deseo, en cualquier pais y en cualquiera condicion que se halle, no está sujeto sino á los mandamientos de su Dios, al dictado de su conciencia, y de una sana razon.

That man is truly happy, who, free from any fear and from every desire, in whatever country, and in whatever condition he may be placed, is only subjected to the commandments of his God, to the dictates of his conscience and of a sound reason.

Cada uno, cada cual. When the signification of these pronouns is indefinite, the exact meaning in English is *every body*, *every one*; but when they have relation to a preceding substantive, the meaning is *each*. Ex.—

Al decir de *cada uno*, mi amigo ha hecho bien en ausentarse.

In the opinion of every one, my friend is right in absenting himself.

A *cada uno* da Dios el frio segun la ropa.

God provides clothes according to one's wants.

Cada uno sabe donde le aprieta el zapato.

Every one knows where the shoe pinches him.

Nosotros somos tres, y *cada uno* quiere ocupar el unico asiento que está desocupado.

We are three, and each wants to take the only seat that is empty.

Aqui hay £1000 de ganancia, y somos siete compañeros, veamos cuanto toca á *cada uno*.

There is here £1000 *profit, and we are seven partners, let us see how much each has to receive.*

Mismo, misma. This pronoun has various significations: 1. When joined to a personal pronoun it means *self*, and then it gives a great energy to the expression; as, *yo mismo iré*, I will go myself. 2. It modifies the substantive by the idea of identity, and then it means

the very same. 3. It signifies *simple,* without art or ornament. Ex.—

Un alma inocente, contenta de *si misma,* no *se* aflije, no teme, no recela, no *se* averguenza.	*An innocent soul, satisfied with itself, is not afflicted, does not fear, does not suspect, nor is ashamed.*
Me ha rehusado lo *mismo* que me habia ofrecido.	*He has refused me the* same *that he had offered me.*
Las palabras de los amantes nadie sabe apreciar tan bien como *ellos mismos.*	*Nobody knows how to value the expressions of lovers so well as themselves.*

Tal. This pronominal adjective means *such a one.* Before a substantive in the singular it is sometimes preceded by *un,* but in the plural it does not admit the indefinite article.

El duque y la duquesa tuvieron á gran ventura acojer en su castillo *tal* caballero andante, y *tal* escudero andado.	*The duke and the duchess thought themselves happy in entertaining in their castle such a knight-errant, and such an amusing squire.*
Un *tal* hombre no se hallará.	*Such a man will not be found.*
Tales tiempos no se han visto jamás.	*Such times have never been seen.*

The more general translation of *such a one,* is *fulano* or *fulana, zutano* or *zutana.* Ex.—*Que fulano o zutana murmure de mi, no se me da cuidado*; I do not care if such or such a one slander me.

The repetition of the same word in several parts of the same period, when properly managed, imparts to the discourse more energy; but that of the pronouns, or pronominal adjectives, has, besides this property, other useful qualities, such as clearness and vivacity. It was a favourite expression of Cervantes, who used to repeat the personal and other pronouns in every person with much grace, as may be seen in the following passages.

Pero qué digo yo miserable ! no soy yo el vencido ? no soy yo el derribado ? no soy yo el que no puedo tomar armas en un año ? pues que prometo ? de qué me alabo ? —Don Quixote, P. II. c. 65.

O fuerte y sobre todo encarecimiento animoso Don Quijote de la Mancha ! Tú á pie, tú solo, tú intrépido, tu magnánimo, con sola una espada, estás aguardando y atendiendo los dos mas fieros leones que jamas criaron las Africanas selvas !—P. I. c. 17.

Ahora pues, este Vicente de la Rosa, este heroe, este galante, este músico, este poeta, fué muchas veces visto y admirado de Leandra.—P. I. c. 51.

Vió, dice la historia, el rostro mismo, la misma figura, el mismo aspecto, la misma fisonomia, la misma efigie, la perspectiva misma del Bachiller Sanson Carrasco.—P. I. c. 51.

Y cómo es posible que halla estendimiento humano que se dé á entender que ha habido en el mundo aquella infinidad de Amadises, tanto emperador, tanto palafren, tanta doncella andante, tantas sierpes, tantos endriagos, tantos gigantes, tanto género de encantamientos, tantas batallas, tantos desaforados encuentros, tanta bizarria de trages, tantos escuderos condes, tantos enanos graciosos, y finalmente tantos y tan disparatados casos como los libros de caballeria contienen ?—P. I. c. 49.

Exercise.

The following verses of the Bible, 1 *Kings, Chap.* VIII., *have been chosen because they abound in pronouns.*

And Solomon said, " Lord God of Israel, there is no God like thee, in heaven above, nor on earth beneath, who keepest covenant and mercy with thy servants that walk before thee with all their hearts : who hast kept with thy servant David my father that thou promisedst him ; thou spakest also with thy mouth, and hast fulfilled it with thine hand, as it is this day. And now, O God of Israel, let thy word, I pray thee, be verified, which thou spakest unto thy servant David my father. But will God indeed dwell on earth ? Behold, the heavens

cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded! Yet, have thou respect unto the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O Lord my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer, which thy servant prayeth before thee to-day.

"When heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against thee; if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, when thou afflictest them; then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, that thou teach them the good way wherein they should walk, and give rain upon thy land, which thou hast given to thy people for an inheritance.

"If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence, blasting, mildew, locust, or if there be caterpillar; if their enemy besiege them in the land of their cities; whatsoever plague, whatsoever sickness there be; what prayer and supplication soever be made by any man, or by all thy people Israel, which shall know every man the plague of his own heart, and spread forth his hands toward this house; then hear thou in heaven thy dwelling place, and forgive, and do, and give to every man, according to his ways, whose hearts thou knowest; (for thou, even thou only, knowest the hearts of all the children of men;) that they may fear thee all the days that they live in the land which thou gavest unto our fathers.

"If they sin against thee, (for there is no man that sinneth not,) and thou be angry with them, and deliver them to the enemy, so that they carry them captives into the land of the enemy, far or near;.... yet, if they return to unto thee, with all their heart, and with all their soul; and pray unto thee, towards their land, which thou gavest unto their fathers, the city which thou hast chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name; then hear thou their prayer, and maintain their cause.... The Lord our God be with us, as he was with our fathers; let him not leave us, nor forsake us."

I shall conclude by giving a list of these pronouns, as a means of learning them more easily than as scattered through the preceding pages.

SPANISH AND ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

Mi, *my.*
mio, *mine.*
tu, *thy.*
tuyo, *thine.*
su, *his, her.*
suyo, *his, hers.*
nuestro, *our.*
vuestro, *your.*
suyo, *theirs.*
mismo, *self.*
el mismo, la misma, lo mismo, } *the same.*
yo mismo, yo misma, } *myself.*
tu mismo, tu misma, } *thyself.*
él mismo, *himself.*
ella misma, *herself.*
nosotros mismos, nosotras mismas, } *ourselves.*
vosotros mismos, vosotras mismas, } *yourselves.*
ellos mismos, ellas mismas, } *themselves.*
me, *to me*, or *myself.*
te, *to you.*
se, le, } *to him* or *her.*
nos, *to us.*
os, *to you.*
se, *themselves.*
les, *to themselves.*
conmigo, *with me.*
contigo, *with thee.*
consigo, *with him or her.*
fulano, *such a one.*
quien, *who.*
quienquiera, *whosoever.*

cual, *which.*
cualquiera, *whichsoever.*
cualquiera cosa que, } *whatsoever.*
lo que, *what.*
todo lo que, *whatever.*
alguien, *somebody.*
alguno, *anybody.*
unos, algunos, } *some.*
cada, *each.*
cada uno, cada cual, } *every one.*
uno, *one.*
otro, *other.*
uno á otro, *to each other.*
uno ú otro, *either.*
ambos, entrambos, } *both.*
nadie, *nobody.*
ninguno, *no* or *none.*
ni uno ni otro, *neither.*
algun otro, *some other.*
algo, *somewhat.*
nada (*adv.*), *nothing.*
todo, *all.*
el todo (*subst.*), *the whole.*
varios, *several.*
diversos, *sundry.*
tal, *such.*
un tal, *such a one.*
otro tal, *such another.*
otros tales, *such others.*
poco (*adv.*), *little.*
pocos, *few.*
mucho (*adv.*), *much.*
muchos, *many.*
tanto (*adv.*), *so much.*
tantos, *as many.*

CHAPTER V.

OF THE VERB IN GENERAL.

Verbs undoubtedly form the most important part of the discourse: no action can be expressed without a verb, the state of an object cannot be known without a verb, and without a verb no person or thing can be defined.

Verbs are commonly divided into five different classes.

1. Auxiliary; which serve to form the compound tenses of all other verbs.

2. Active, called also Transitive, because they express an action that passes from an agent to an object; such are those verbs to which may be added the word *somebody* or *something*.

3. Neuter, called also Intransitive, because they express an action that remains in the subject, and consequently they do not refer to *any body* or to *any thing*.

4. Reflective verbs are those reflecting the action on the subject that produces it.

5. Impersonal verbs are those which have no agent producing the action.

There are not in Spanish, or in any modern language, *passive* verbs with proper terminations. What is called the passive voice is formed with the auxiliary verbs and the participle past of the other verbs.

All verbs undergo four principal changes calledMoods.

1. The *Infinitive*, so called because it expresses actions in general.

2. The *Indicative*, so called because it points out in a positive manner the action or situation of a subject.

3. The *Imperative*, which serves not only to express command, but also to beg and to exhort.

4. The *Subjunctive*, so called because it is subjoined to a preceding verb. This mood is also called *conjunctive*, *optative*, and *potential*, according to the different meanings it may express.

All verbs have different tenses by which they are conjugated, both by numbers and persons. The number of these tenses and terminations is not the same in modern languages: the English verb has fewer tenses than

those usually found in foreign verbs, and the terminations do not exceed five in a regular verb; while the Spanish has four tenses in the subjunctive mood, and three compound in the infinitive, more than any other modern language, and consequently a greater variety of terminations, the last syllable of the infinitive changing about sixty times.

Most of the simple tenses have generally the same names in all grammars; but the compound tenses have received such a multiplicity of terms, that the preterite is called indifferently *imperfect*, *preterimperfect*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, *preterpluperfect*, *definite*, *indefinite*, *anterior*, *determinate*, *indeterminate*, with other enigmatical denominations arising from metaphysical distinctions of time, more fit to perplex than to assist the scholar in learning a foreign language. Leaving, therefore, these distinctions to the professors of universal grammar, I shall here call the simple tenses by their most usual names, and their compounds after the names of the simple tenses from which they are formed.

Section I.

Auxiliary Verbs.

All languages have two auxiliary verbs, one to form the compound tenses, and another to supply the want of a passive conjugation; but the Spanish enjoys the singular advantage of possessing four auxiliary verbs. With *haber*, 'to have', the compound tenses are generally formed; and with *tener*, 'to have', not only the compound tenses are formed, but the meaning of the participle is more accurately expressed. Ex.—*El rey lo* HA *mandado*; here the literal meaning is that *the king has so ordered*; but *el rey lo* TIENE *mandado*, gives more force to the expression,—it means that *the king has resolved that such a thing shall be done.* With *ser*, 'to be', the passive voice is formed, and the essence or entity of things is declared; and with *estar*, 'to be', not only the passive signification, but another sort of existence, or another

state of things is expressed. Ex.—*El Colegio del Rey* ES *un edificio hermoso, pero no* ESTA' *situado ventajosamente*; King's College *is* a handsome building, but it *is* not advantageously situated:—the verb *es* in the first part of the phrase expresses an intrinsic and essential quality of the structure, and the verb *está* in the second denotes its accidental or casual situation.

I shall give, first the conjugation of the two auxiliary verbs, *haber* and *tener*, with their different use, and then the conjugation of the two substantive verbs, *ser* and *estar*, with their different applications.

HABER, *to have.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

1. Yo he,	*I have.*
2. tu has,	*thou hast.*
3. el ha,	*he has.*
1. nosotros hemos,	*we have.*
2. vosotros habeis,	*you have.*
3. ellos han,	*they have.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

yo he habido, *I have had.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

habia,	*I had.*
habias,	*thou hadst.*
habia,	*he had.*
habíamos,	*we had.*
habíais,	*you had.*
habian,	*they had.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

yo habia habido, *I had had.* &c.

Preterperfect.

hube,	*I had.*
hubiste,	*thou hadst.*
hubo,	*he had.*
hubimos,	*we had.*
hubísteis,	*you had.*
hubieron,	*they had.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

yo hube habido, *I had had.* &c.

Future.

habré,	*I shall have.*
habrás,	*thou wilt have.*
habrá,	*he will have.*
habremos,	*we shall have.*
habreis,	*you will have.*
habrán,	*they will have.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

yo habré habido, *I shall have had.* &c.

No Imperative.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

que haya,	*that I may have.*
hayas,	*thou mayst have.*
el haya,	*he may have.*
hayamos,	*we may have.*
hayais,	*you may have.*
hayan,	*they may have.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

que yo haya habido, *that I may have had.* &c.

First Imperfect in -ra.

aunque hubiera,	*though I could have.*
hubieras,	*thou couldst have.*
hubiera,	*he could have.*
hubiéramos,	*we could have.*
hubiérais,	*you could have.*
hubieran,	*they could have.*

2. Compound Tense.

yo hubiera habido, *I could have had.* &c.

Second Imperfect in -se.

aunque hubiese,	*though I might have.*
hubieses,	*thou mightest have.*
hubiese,	*he might have.*
hubiésemos,	*we might have.*
hubiéseis,	*you might have.*
hubiesen,	*they might have.*

3. Compound Tense.

yo hubiese habido, *I might have had.* &c.

Conditional.

habria,	*I would have.*
habrias,	*thou wouldst have.*
habria,	*he would have.*
habríamos,	*we would have.*
habríais,	*you would have.*
habrian,	*they would have.*

4. Compound Tense.

yo habria habido, *I would have had.* &c.

Future.

si hubiere,	*if I should have.*
hubieres,	*thou shouldst have.*
hubiere,	*he should have.*

si hubiéremos,	*if we should have.*
hubiéreis,	*you should have.*
hubieren,	*they should have.*

5. Compound Tense.

si yo hubiere habido, *if I should have had.* &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	haber,	*to have.*
Pret. perfect.	haber habido,	*to have had.*
Future.	haber de haber,	*about to have.*
Gerund.	habiendo,	*having.*
Part. past.	habido,	*had.*
Part. future.	habiendo de haber,	*being about to have.*

TENER, *to have.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Yo tengo,	*I have.*
tu tienes,	*thou hast.*
el tiene,	*he has.*
nosotros tenemos,	*we have.*
vosotros teneis,	*you have.*
ellos tienen,	*they have.*

1. Compound Tense.

yo he tenido, *I have had.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

tenia,	*I had.*
tenias,	*thou hadst.*
tenia,	*he had.*
teníamos,	*we had.*
teníais,	*you had.*
tenian,	*they had.*

2. Compound Tense.

yo habia tenido, *I had had.* &c.

Preterperfect.

tuve,	*I had.*
tuviste,	*thou hadst.*
tuvo,	*he had.*
tuvimos,	*we had.*
tuvísteis,	*you had.*
tuvieron,	*they had.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

N.B. This tense is of little use, as it means the same as the simple one; however, after the adverbs *despues que*, *luego que*, and *así que*, it is very elegant, and preferable to the simple tense.

Future.

tendré,	*I shall have.*
tendrás,	*thou wilt have.*
tendrá,	*he will have.*
tendremos,	*we shall have.*
tendreis,	*you will have.*
tendrán,	*they will have.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

yo habré tenido, *I shall have had.* &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. ten tu, *have thou*; tenga él, *let him have.*
Plur. tened vos., *have you*; tengan ellos, *let them have.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

que tenga,	*that I may have.*
tengas,	*thou mayst have.*
tenga,	*he may have.*
tengamos,	*we may have.*
tengais,	*you may have.*
tengan,	*they may have.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

que yo haya tenido, *that I may have had.* &c.

First Imperfect in -ra.

aunque tuviera,	*though I should have.*
tuvieras,	*thou shouldst have.*
tuviera,	*he should have.*
tuviéramos,	*we should have.*
tuviérais,	*you should have.*
tuvieran,	*they should have.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

yo hubiera tenido, *I should have had.* &c.

Second Imperfect in -se.

aunque tuviese,	*though I might have.*
tuvieses,	*thou mightest have.*
tuviese,	*he might have.*
tuviésemos,	*we might have.*
tuviéseis,	*you might have.*
tuviesen,	*they might have.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

yo hubiese tenido, *I might have had.* &c.

Conditional.

tendria,	*I would have.*
tendrias,	*thou wouldst have.*
tendria,	*he would have.*
tendríamos,	*we would have.*
tendríais,	*you would have.*
tendrian,	*they would have.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

yo habria tenido, *I would have had.* &c.

Future.

si tuviere,	*if I should have.*
tuvieres,	*thou shouldst have.*
tuviere,	*he should have.*

si tuviéremos,	*if we should have.*
tuviéreis,	*you should have.*
tuvieren,	*they should have.*

5. Compound Tense.

si yo hubiere tenido, *if I should have had.* &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	tener,	*to have.*
Pret. perf.	haber tenido,	*to have had.*
Future.	haber de tener,	*about to have.*
Gerund.	teniendo,	*having.*
Part. past.	tenido,	*had.*
Part. fut.	habiendo de tener,	*being about to have.*

N.B. This verb, through all its tenses here given, is also an active verb of the second conjugation, when it means *to hold* or *to possess.*

Difference between HABER *and* TENER.

I. HABER has no signification by itself; it can, therefore, be used only as an auxiliary verb, and must precede the participle. There is but one instance in which its gerund has any signification by itself, viz. *habiendo esa circunstancia*, that circumstance taking place. Some ancient writers have made use of *haber* for *tener* in the present of the indicative and in the infinitive; as, *He ocasion* for *tengo ocasion. Mas vale saber que haber.*

II. HABER and TENER may be used indifferently as the auxiliary of many verbs. Ex.—*He dicho* or *tengo dicho*, I have said; *lo he hecho* or *lo tengo hecho*, I have done so:—but the sense of these expressions may be different according to the intention of the speaker. *He dicho* means merely 'I have said', and *tengo dicho* means expressly 'I have concluded';—*lo he hecho* simply means 'I have done it', and *lo tengo hecho* may express 'it is done, and I cannot help it':—*le he encargado* only means 'I have recommended him to do this or that, and perhaps he will do it'; but *le tengo encargado* expresses 'I have par-

ticularly recommended him to do this or that, and I hope he will do so': it implies authority or great influence over the person alluded to.

III. The two futures of the infinitive, and other future actions in all verbs, may be formed with *haber* or *tener*, but with this difference, that *haber* requires the preposition *de*, and *tener* must have the conjunction *que*, as its regimen. Ex.—

Haber *de* hacer, *or* tener *que* hacer, *to have to do.*

Habiendo *de* partir, *or* teniendo *que* partir, *being obliged to depart.*

He *de* comer hoy con N., *or* tengo *que* comer hoy con N., *I am to dine today with N.*

Yo habia *de* venir, *or* tenia *que* venir solo, *I was to come alone.*

Habré *de* ir, *or* tendré *que* ir temprano, *I must go early.*

SER, *to be.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Yo soy,	*I am.*
tu eres,	*thou art.*
el es,	*he is.*
nosotros somos,	*we are.*
vosotros sois,	*you are.*
ellos son,	*they are.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

Yo he sido, *I have been.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

era,	*I was.*
eras,	*thou wast.*
era,	*he was.*

éramos,	*we were.*
érais,	*you were.*
éran,	*they were.*

2. Compound Tense.

yo habia sido, *I had been.* &c.

Preterperfect.

fui,	*I was.*
fuiste,	*thou wast.*
fué,	*he was.*
fuimos,	*we were.*
fuisteis,	*you were.*
fueron,	*they were.*

The Compound Tense of this Verb is become obsolete.

Future.

seré,	*I shall be.*
serás,	*thou wilt be.*
será,	*he will be.*
seremos,	*we shall be.*
sereis,	*you will be.*
serán,	*they will be.*

3. Compound Tense.

yo habré sido, *I shall have been.* &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. sé tu, *be thou;* sea él, *let him be.*
Plur. sed vos., *be you;* sean ellos, *let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

que sea,	*that I may be.*
seas,	*thou mayst be.*
sea,	*he may be.*

seamos,	*we may be.*
seais,	*you may be.*
sean,	*they may be.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

que haya sido, *that I may have been.* &c.

First Imperfect in -ra.

aunque fuera,	*though I should be.*
fueras,	*thou shouldst be.*
fuera,	*he should be.*
fuéramos,	*we should be.*
fuérais,	*you should be.*
fueran,	*they should be.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

yo hubiera sido, *I should have been.* &c.

Second Imperfect in -se.

aunque fuese,	*though I might be.*
fueses,	*thou mightst be.*
fuese,	*he might be.*
fuésemos,	*we might be.*
fuéseis,	*you might be.*
fuesen,	*they might be.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

yo hubiese sido, *I might have been.* &c.

Conditional.

seria,	*I would be.*
serias,	*thou wouldst be.*
seria,	*he would be.*
seríamos,	*we would be.*
seríais,	*you would be.*
serian.	*they would be.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

yo habria sido, *I would have been.* &c.

Future.

si fuere,	*if I should be.*
fueres,	*thou shouldst be.*
fuere,	*he should be.*
fuéremos,	*we should be.*
fuéreis,	*you should be.*
fueren,	*they should be.*

5. *Compound Tense.*

yo hubiere sido, *I should have been.* &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	ser,	*to be.*
Pret. perfect.	haber sido,	*to have been.*
Future.	haber de ser,	*to have to be.*
Gerund.	siendo,	*being.*
Part. past.	sido,	*been.*
Part. future.	habiendo de ser,	*having to be.*

ESTAR, *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Yo estoy,	*I am.*
tu estás,	*thou art.*
el está,	*he is.*
nosotros estamos,	*we are.*
vosotros estais,	*you are.*
ellos están,	*they are.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

yo he estado, *I have been.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

estaba,	*I was.*
estabas,	*thou wast.*
estaba,	*he was.*

estábamos,	*we were.*
estábais,	*you were.*
estaban,	*they were.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

yo habia estado, *I had been.* &c.

Preterperfect.

estuve,	*I was.*
estuviste,	*thou wast.*
estuvo,	*he was.*
estuvimos,	*we were.*
estuvísteis,	*you were.*
estuvieron,	*they were.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

yo hube estado, *I had been.* &c.

Future.

estaré,	*I shall be.*
estarás,	*thou wilt be.*
estará,	*he will be.*
estaremos,	*we shall be.*
estareis,	*you will be.*
estarán,	*they will be.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

yo habré estado, *I shall have been.* &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. está tu, *be thou*; esté él, *let him be.*
Plur. estad vos., *be you*; estén ellos, *let them be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

que esté,	*that I may be.*
estés,	*thou mayst be.*
esté,	*he may be.*
estemos,	*we may be.*
esteis,	*you may be.*
estén,	*they may be.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

yo haya estado, *I may have been.* &c.

First Imperfect in -ra.

aunque estuviera,	*though I should be.*
estuvieras,	*thou shouldst be.*
estuviera,	*he should be.*
estuviéramos,	*we should be.*
estuviérais,	*you should be.*
estuvieran,	*they should be.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

yo hubiera estado, *I should have been.* &c.

Second Imperfect in -se.

aunque estuviese,	*though I might be.*
estuvieses,	*thou mightest be.*
estuviese,	*he might be.*
estuviésemos,	*we might be.*
estuviéseis,	*you might be.*
estuviesen,	*they might be.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

yo hubiese estado, *I might have been.* &c.

Conditional.

estaria,	*I should be.*
estarias,	*thou wouldst be.*
estaria,	*he would be.*
estaríamos,	*we should be.*
estaríais,	*you would be.*
estarian,	*they would be.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

yo habria estado, *I would have been.* &c.

Future.

si estuviere,	*if I should be.*
estuvieres,	*thou shouldst be.*
estuviere,	*he should be.*

si estuviéremos,	*if we should be.*
estuviéreis,	*you should be.*
estuvieren,	*they should be.*

5. Compound Tense.

yo hubiere estado, *I should have been.* &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	estar,	*to be.*
Pret. perf.	haber estado,	*to have been.*
Future.	haber de estar,	*to be about to be.*
Gerund.	estando,	*being.*
Part. past.	estado,	*been.*
Part. future.	habiendo de estar,	*being about to be.*

Difference between SER *and* ESTAR.

One of the greatest beauties of the Spanish language is the variety, the energy, and nicety of expression which these two substantive verbs give to the discourse, by expressing two different kinds of existence, or two sorts of conditions, in the same person or thing, and at the same time. EX.—*Estos* SON *los soldados que* ESTAN *acuartelados aqui;* these *are* the soldiers who *are* stationed here. *Tal* ERA *el tirano que los* ESTABA *oprimiendo;* such *was* the tyrant who oppressed them at that time. As the words *soldado* and *tirano* express the profession of the former, and the natural disposition of the latter, they require the verb *ser*; but *acuartelado* and *oprimiendo,* expressing a temporary station, and an abuse of power, which are only circumstances, require the verb *estar.* To mistake these two verbs in the above phrases would be as intolerable to a Spanish ear, as the mistake of *shall* and *will* in a sentence would be to the ear of an Englishman. But there is this difference in the two languages, with respect to the comparison just made, that in English there is an easy rule for foreigners to learn the distinction between those two defective verbs,—the only object of which is to denote a future action,—while *ser* and *estar* in Spanish, being

substantive verbs pervading the whole language, are applied to such a multitude of phrases, and with such delicate distinctions, as to require an exquisite tact in the use of them. No precise directions can be given to foreigners; and they must therefore be left to practice. Some rules, however, may help the student in discriminating their proper application in many instances.

On the right use of SER *and* ESTAR.

The verb SER may govern either a substantive or an adjective, but never a gerund or past participle. A. *es* comerciante, *merchant* (subst.), y *es* rico, *rich* (adj.); B. *es* coronel, *colonel* (subst.), y *es* honrado, *honorable* (adj.); C. *es* autor, *author* (subst.), y *es* chistoso, *witty* (adj.), &c. But the verb ESTAR cannot have a substantive after it, and must be followed by an adjective, a gerund, or a participle. D. *está* esperando, *waiting* (ger.), y *está* muy enojado, *angry* (adj.); E. *está* cansado (part.), y *está* ahora durmiendo, *sleeping* (ger.); sus padres *están* ausentes, *his father and mother are absent* (adj.). Hence a general principle may be established, viz.—SER cannot govern a gerund or participle past, and ESTAR cannot govern a substantive. The difficulty, therefore, is now reduced only to the adjectives, which are equally governed by both verbs. Most adjectives in Spanish may express different sorts of qualities in the subjects; and it is the nature of these qualities that requires the employment of one of these verbs, with the exclusion of the other. The following rules will be of great service to learn the right use of these two verbs.

I. SER *expresses those attributes which are essential, permanent, or inseparable from the subject; and* ESTAR *represents those qualities which are accidental or temporary.* I shall explain the application of this principle in some sentences.

1st. *Esta casa* es *grande, pero* está *mal distribuida*, 'this house *is* large, but it *is* badly arranged'. In this example, *grande* gives the idea of magnitude, which is a permanent quality after the house is built, and therefore it requires the verb *ser*; but *distribuida* relates only

to the arrangement of the parts, which may be altered partially, if not entirely, and therefore it requires the verb *estar*. On the contrary, if the tailor brings me a coat, and I find it too large for me, I must say, *Esta casaca me* está *grande, la quiero mas ajustada*, because *grande* here relates to the *size* of the coat, casually too large, and which may be easily reduced to fit me better.

2. *El agua de la mar* es *salada, pero en Cadiz* está *mas salada que en Brighton.* Saltness, in the first part of this sentence, relates to the sea in general, and it is an inherent quality of sea-water throughout the globe; but in the second part of the phrase it relates to the degree of saltness in both places, in the abstract, and consequently to an accidental difference arising from the greater or less evaporation caused by the agency of the sun. And such is the fact,—the sea-water in the bay of Cadiz contains one sixteenth, and on the coast of England only one thirty-second part of its weight of salt.

3. *El agua* es *fluida, pero un frio grande la hiela; esta* es *la razon por qué entre tropicos* está *siempre fluida, y en los polos* está *siempre helada.* In the first part of this sentence, the adjective *fluida* relates to the nature of the water, as an inherent property, and therefore the verb *ser* must be used; and *razon*, being a substantive governed by the verb, requires *ser*: but in the second part the words *fluida* and *helada* relate to the state of the water as acted upon by the temperature,—an effect which, though always permanent, is, however, separable from the nature of that element, and therefore it requires the verb *estar.*

II. To be *good, bad, better, worse, convenient*, &c., may relate to the nature of persons or things, and then it means to be essentially good, bad, &c.;—it requires therefore the verb *ser*; as, *es bueno, es malo, es mejor*, &c. But to be *well, ill, better, comfortable*, or *uncomfortable*, &c., relates to the actual state or circumstances under which a person may be found at the time, and consequently requires the verb *estar*; as *estoy bueno, estoy malo, estoy mejor, estoy á gusto*, &c.

III. When the verb *to be* expresses an action, or the

effect of an action, produced by the operation of the mind, by passion, or by the hands of man, the verb *estar* ought to be used. Ex.—

Ese libro está elegantemente escrito; todos los sentimientos están ahí fuertemente espresados.	*That book is elegantly written; all the sentiments in it* are *strongly expressed.*
El amor y el odio están igualmente arraigados en el corazon del vicioso.	*Love and hatred are equally rooted in the heart of the vicious man.*

But if the whole or part of the sentence is in the passive voice, the verb *ser* must be used.

El abogado estaba cierto de la justicia de su causa, y el jurado fue convencido por sus argumentos.	*The pleader was conscious of the justice of his cause, and the jury was convinced by his arguments.*

The first part of this sentence requires the verb *estar*, but the second, being in the passive voice, requires *ser*.

IV. Locality, however permanent it may be considered, is always expressed by *estar*. Ex.—

La Gran Bretaña está rodeada de mar.	*Great Britain is surrounded by the sea.*
Londres está situada á las orillas del Támesis.	*London is situated on the banks of the Thames.*
Irlanda es la parte mas occidental, y España es la mas meridional, de Europa.	*Ireland is the most western part of Europe, and Spain the most southern.*

The idea in the first two sentences rests exclusively on a particular place; but in the last it rests on the relative position of all the parts of Europe, and therefore it requires the verb *ser*.

There are other cases in which no precise rules can be given for the translation of the English verb *to be*; for instance, the expression *he is dead*, is translated in Spanish in three different ways, according to the circumstances of time, by *estar*, by *haber*, and by *ser*. If a physician is called to see a patient in a fit, and on arriving he finds him lifeless, he must say, *está muerto*;

if, returning home, he is asked how the patient is, he must say, *ha muerto*; and if, after a long time, somebody inquires of him about that person, he must say, *es muerto.* In the first phrase, the meaning of the verb is about the state of the person, with some doubt whether life is extinct or not, and therefore *estar* must be used; in the second, it denotes an event just past, and requires the compound tense of the verb *morir*; and in the third, it relates to the general condition of the dead, and therefore it requires the verb *ser.*

The preceding rules and examples show the peculiar nicety in the application of these two most essential verbs of the Spanish language; a discrimination rendered easy by custom to a native, however illiterate, but of great difficulty to a foreigner. For instance, Feijóo, speaking of the invention of gunpowder, says, *Tan lejos* está *de* ser *verdadera la mayor mortandad,* &c.; so far is the great slaughter from being true, &c. To say that a thing is true, means that it will be always so; but the case in which a proposition may or may not be true is casual, and therefore requires the verb *estar.*

Again: *Quienes* son *los que* estaban *con vm.*? Who are those who were with you? Those who were with you, though for the moment, are essentially the same persons; but the circumstance of their being with you is entirely accidental, and therefore the verb *estar* ought to be used.

Themes on the Auxiliary Verbs.

The world is full of enemies, and all men have need
mundo *lleno* *enemigo* *necesidad*
of caution. It is our part to exercise the greatest pru-
cautela *parte* *ejercitar*
dence.

If the longest life be compared to eternity, it is very
largo *vida* *comparar* *muy*
short; if the happiest condition be compared with
corto *feliz*
heaven, it is miserable, and not worthy of our desires.
cielo *digno* *deseo*

Earthly happiness sometimes does harm, but heaven
terreno felicidad algunas veces daño

is altogether desirable.
enteramente

We wait till tomorrow to be happy: alas! why not
aguardar mañana Ay por qué

today? Shall we be younger? Are we sure we shall
hoy joven seguro

be healthier?
sano

Peace of mind being secured, we may smile at mis-
paz animo asegurar sonreir des-

fortunes. He only is great who has the habits of
ventura solo habito

greatness.
magnanimidad.

Here everything is in stir and fluctuation; there all
aquí todo tumulto allí

is serene, steady and orderly.
sereno firme ordenado.

Those who have most money obtain the greatest
mas dinero obtener, irr.

reverence among men. Virtue is most worthy of ho-
entre virtud

nour; but riches are preferred before honesty. Few
riqueza preferir integridad

understand the excellency of virtue; but wise men
conocer sabio

esteem him whose mind is adorned with the best
estimar adornar

wisdom, more than him whose storehouses are full of
sabiduria almacen lleno

all sorts of treasures.
suerte tesoro.

The hearts of men are full of deceit: the wisest
corazon *engaño*
man knows not himself sufficiently: the thoughts of
conocer *pensamiento*
men are thoroughly known only by God.
enteramente

A desire to die is culpable, when it proceeds only
deseo *morir*, irr. *proceder*
from impatience by reason of trouble. But he that is
de *razon* *adversidad.*
desirous to live, when death would be more honourable
deseoso *vivir* *muerte*
to God and religion, wants Christian courage, and is of
carecer *valor*
a feeble mind.
debil animo.

Zeal is a fire whose flame proceeds from the fire of
zelo *fuego* *llama proceder*
love; but it must be confined within the bounds of
amor *reducir dentro* *limite*
truth. Nothing is more dangerous than blind and false
verdad *peligroso* *ciego*
zeal.

All die not at the same age. Some go out of the
misma edad *salir*, irr.
world in their youth, others proceed to manhood, some
mundo *juventud* *virilidad*
reach to old age; no one is sure to live another year,
alcanzar *vejez* *seguro* *año*
yet no one is content to die this year; every one desires
morir *desear*
to live another. Those are most happy who are always
vivir
prepared.

Exercise.

I. Of all the parts of speech, verbs are by far the most complex and useful. From their importance we may justly conclude that they were coeval with the origin of language, though a long time must have been requisite to bring them to that accuracy in which they are now found. The first division of the conjugation of a verb is into an active and a passive voice, according as the affirmation regards something that is done, or something that is suffered; as, *I love*, or *I am loved*. The second division is into moods, which are intended to express the affirmation, whether active or passive, under different forms. The indicative mood simply declares a proposition; as, *I write*, *I have written*. The imperative expresses command, exhortation, prohibition, or threat; as, *arise*, *remember*, *cease*. The subjunctive expresses the proposition under the form of a condition, or as subordinate to some other thing, to which a reference is made; as, *I would do it, if it were in my power*. The third division is into tenses, which are contrived to imply the several distinctions of time. We think, in general, of no more than its three great divisions, the past, the present, and the future; and we might suppose that, if verbs had been so contrived as merely to express these, no more was necessary. But language proceeds with much greater art and subtilty: it divides time into its several moments; it regards time as never standing still, but always flowing; things past, as more or less perfectly completed; and things future, as more or less distant, by different gradations. Hence the variety of tenses which are found in almost every language.

Speech, *discurso*; by far, *con mucho*; useful, *util*; conclude, *concluir*; time, *tiempo*; to bring, *traer*, irr.; accuracy, *exactitud*; to find, *hallar*; voice, *voz*; according, *segun*; to regard, *dirijirse*; something, *algo*; to suffer, *sufrir*; mood, *modo*; to intend, *intentar*; threat, *amenaza*; to arise, *alzarse*; to remember, *acordarse*; to cease, *cesar*; power, *poder*, s.; tense, *tiempo*; to contrive, *inventar*; to imply, *comprender*; to think, *pensar*; to suppose, *suponer*; subtilty, *sutileza*; moment, *momento*; to stand still, *estar quieto*; to flow, *correr*; to complete, *completar*.

II. Conjugation is reckoned most perfect in those languages which, by changing either the termination or the initial syllable of the verb, express the greatest number of important circumstances, without the assistance of auxiliary verbs. In the Eastern tongues, the verb has few tenses; but their moods are so constructed as to express an extensive variety of circumstances and relations. In the Hebrew, they say in one word, without the aid of an auxiliary, not only, 'I have taught,' but, 'I have taught exactly, or frequently;—I have been commanded to teach;—I have taught myself.' The Greek, which is the most perfect of all languages, is very regular and complete in all the moods and tenses. The Latin, though formed on the same model, is not so perfect, particularly in the passive voice, which forms most of the tenses by the aid of the auxiliary *sum*. In the modern European tongues, conjugation is very defective. The two auxiliary verbs, *to have* and *to be*, prefixed to the participle, supersede in a great measure the different terminations of moods and tenses which formed the ancient conjugations. The Spanish, by the additional help of two other auxiliaries, is enabled to express different circumstances or qualities possessed by the same subject, without increasing the tenses.

To reckon, *estimarse*; to change, *mudar*; number, *numero*; eastern, *oriental*; tongue, *lengua*; to construct, *construir*, irr.; to say, *decir*; word, *palabra*; aid, *ayuda*; to teach, *enseñar*; to command, *mandar*; complete, *completo*; to form, *formar*; model, *modelo*; to prefix, *prefijar*; participle, *participio*; to supersede, *substituir*; help, *ayuda*; to be enabled, *ser capaz*; to possess, *poseer*; subject, *sujeto*; to increase, *aumentar*.

Observations on the Verb SER.

The position of the verb SER after the substantive gives to the sentence a great degree of energy and majesty, as may be perceived in the following expressions.

Dura cosa *es* ver un hombre su deshonra y no poder vengarla; mejor seria morir á manos del mas	*It is a hard thing for a man to see his dishonour and not to be able to revenge it; it is better to fall by the*

fuerte, que vivir en un tal abatimiento.

Hombre! menester *es* que des gracias á tu Criador por haberte constituido dueño de las riquezas de la tierra: las frutas que producen los arboles para ti *son*; la leche y carne que cria la vaca alimento tuyo *es*; el vellon que cria la oveja beneficio tuyo *es*; la miel que recoje la industriosa abeja regalo tuyo *es*; la fina seda que hila el gusano beneficio tuyo *es*; todas las producciones de la naturaleza son para tu beneficio.—*Luis de Granada.*

hand of the stronger than to live in such humiliation.

Man! thou must thank thy Creator who has made thee possessor of the riches of the earth: the fruits that the trees produce are thine; the milk and the flesh that the cattle give are for thine own use; the fleece that the sheep bears is for thine own benefit; the honey that the industrious bee stores is for thine own pleasure; the fine silk that the worm spins is for thine own use; all the productions of nature are for thine own benefit.

The repetition of the verb *ser* in the same phrase forms a peculiar expression of singular grace, which I am not able to translate into English. *Un si* es *no* es:—the meaning is, there is something in it that cannot be affirmed nor can be denied, but every one is conscious of perceiving it. Ex.—

Parece que lleva el retirarse un si *es* no *es* de sombra de miedo.—*D. Quixote.*

In retreating there is something which seems to carry some appearance of danger with it.

El mas mozo de los estudiantes era vivarracho, y un si *es* no *es* atolondrado. —*El P. Isla.*

The younger of the students was sprightly, and somewhat stupid.

Esa Señora de quien vm. habla puede ser muy virtuosa, pero yo he observado en su conversacion un si *es* no *es* de lijereza que me hace dudar de la pureza de su mente.

That lady you speak of may be virtuous; but I have observed in her conversation some shadow of levity which makes me doubt of the purity of her mind.

This expression, though used always to censure, yet does not appear very offensive, because the observation, however malignant, is politely clothed with the appearance of reasonable doubt.

Section II.

Regular Verbs.

Those verbs which express the different persons, numbers, and tenses, by established variations in their inflections, are called regular: all are reduced in Spanish to three classes, according to the termination of their infinitives, and they are conjugated in the following manner.

First Conjugation in *AR*.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Yo amo,	*I love.*
tu amas,	*thou lovest.*
el ama,	*he loves.*
nosotros amamos,	*we love.*
vosotros amais,	*you love.*
ellos aman,	*they love.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

he amado, *I have loved.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

amaba,	*I did love,*
amabas,	*thou didst love.*
amaba,	*he did love.*
amábamos,	*we did love.*
amábais,	*you did love.*
amaban,	*they did love.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

habia amado, *I had loved.* &c.

Preterperfect.

amé,	*I loved.*
amaste,	*thou lovedst.*
amó,	*he loved.*
amamos,	*we loved.*
amásteis,	*you loved.*
amaron,	*they loved.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

hube amado, *I had loved.* &c.

Future.

amaré,	*I shall love.*
amarás,	*thou wilt love.*
amará,	*he will love.*
amaremos,	*we shall love.*
amaréis,	*you will love.*
amarán,	*they will love.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

habré amado, *I shall have loved.* &c.

N.B. All the tenses of the indicative mood are independent of another verb and of any conjunction.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ama tu,	*love thou.*
ame él,	*let him love.*
amad vosotros,	*love you.*
amen ellos,	*let them love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

que ame,	*that I may love.*
ames,	*thou mayst love.*
ame,	*he may love.*
amemos,	*we may love.*
ameis,	*you may love.*
amen,	*they may love.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

haya amado, *I may have loved.* &c.

First Imperfect.

cuando amara,	*when I should love.*
amaras,	*thou shouldst love.*
amara,	*he should love.*
amáramos,	*we should love.*
amárais,	*you should love.*
amaran,	*they should love.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

hubiera amado, *I should have loved.* &c.

Second Imperfect.

aunque amase,	*though I might love.*
amases,	*thou mightest love.*
amase,	*he might love.*
amásemos,	*we might love.*
amáseis,	*you might love.*
amasen,	*they might love.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

hubiese amado, *I might have loved.* &c.

Conditional.

amaría,	*I would love.*
amarías,	*thou wouldst love.*
amaría,	*he would love.*
amaríamos,	*we would love.*
amaríais,	*you would love.*
amarían,	*they would love.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

habria amado, *I would have loved.* &c.

Future.

si amare,	*if I should love.*
amares,	*thou shouldst love.*
amare,	*he should love.*
amáremos,	*we should love.*
amáreis,	*you should love.*
amaren,	*they should love.*

5. *Compound Tense.*

hubiere amado, *I should have loved.* &c.

N.B. All the tenses in the subjunctive mood depend on some other verb, either expressed or understood; and all, the conditional excepted, must have a conjunction before them.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	amar,	*to love.*
Preterite.	haber amado,	*to have loved.*
Future.	haber de amar,	*to have to love.*
Gerund.	amando,	*loving.*
Pres. part.	amante,	*loving* (seldom used).
Past part.	amado,	*loved.*
Fut. part.	habiendo de amar,	*having to love.*

SECOND CONJUGATION IN *ER*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Yo temo,	*I fear.*
tu temes,	*thou fearest.*
el teme,	*he fears.*
nosotros tememos,	*we fear.*
vosotros temeis,	*you fear.*
ellos temen,	*they fear.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

he temido, *I have feared.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

temia,	*I did fear.*
temias,	*thou didst fear.*
temia,	*he did fear.*
temíamos,	*we did fear.*
temíais,	*you did fear.*
temian,	*they did fear.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

habia temido, *I had feared.* &c.

Preterperfect.

temí,	*I feared.*
temiste,	*thou fearedst.*
temió,	*he feared.*
temimos,	*we feared.*
temísteis,	*you feared.*
temieron,	*they feared.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

hube temido, *I had feared.* &c.

Future.

temeré,	*I shall fear.*
temerás,	*thou wilt fear.*
temerá,	*he will fear.*
temeremos,	*we shall fear.*
temereis,	*you will fear.*
temerán,	*they will fear.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

habré temido, *I shall have feared.* &c.

Imperative Mood.

teme tu,	*fear thou.*
tema él,	*let him fear.*
temed vosotros,	*fear you.*
teman ellos,	*let them fear.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

que tema,	*that I may fear.*
temas,	*thou mayst fear.*
tema,	*he may fear.*
temamos,	*we may fear.*
temais,	*you may fear.*
teman,	*they may fear.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

haya temido, *I may have feared.* &c.

First Imperfect.

aunque temiera,	*though I should fear.*
temieras,	*thou shouldst fear.*
temiera,	*he should fear.*
temiéramos,	*we should fear.*
temiérais,	*you should fear.*
temieran,	*they should fear.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

hubiera temido, *I should have feared.* &c.

Second Imperfect.

cuando temiese,	*when I should fear.*
temieses,	*thou shouldst fear.*
temiese,	*he should fear.*
temiésemos,	*we should fear.*
temiéseis,	*you should fear.*
temiesen,	*they should fear.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

hubiese temido, *I should have feared.* &c.

Conditional.

temeria,	*I would fear.*
temerias,	*thou wouldst fear.*
temeria,	*he would fear.*

temeríamos,	*we would fear.*
temeríais,	*you would fear.*
temerian,	*they would fear.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

habria temido, *I would have feared.* &c.

Future.

si temiese,	*if I should fear.*
temieses,	*thou shouldst fear.*
temiese,	*he should fear.*
temiésemos,	*we should fear.*
temiéseis,	*you should fear.*
temiesen,	*they should fear.*

5. *Compound Tense.*

hubiese temido, *I should have feared.* &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	temer,	*to fear.*
Preterite.	haber temido,	*to have feared.*
Future.	haber de temer,	*to have to fear.*
Gerund.	temiendo,	*fearing.*
Pres. part.	temiente,	*fearing* (little used).
Past part.	temido,	*feared.*
Fut. part.	habiendo de temer,	*having to fear.*

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IR.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Yo parto,	*I part.*
tu partes,	*thou partest.*
el parte,	*he parts.*
nosotros partimos,	*we part.*
vosotros partís,	*you part.*
ellos parten,	*they part.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

he partido, *I have parted.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

partia,	*I did part.*
partias,	*thou didst part.*
partia,	*he did part.*
partíamos,	*we did part.*
partíais,	*you did part.*
partian,	*they did part.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

habia partido, *I had parted.* &c.

Preterperfect.

partí,	*I parted.*
partiste,	*thou partedst.*
partió,	*he parted.*
partimos,	*we parted.*
partísteis,	*you parted.*
partieron,	*they parted.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

hube partido, *I had parted.* &c.

Future.

partirê,	*I shall part.*
partirás,	*thou wilt part.*
partirá,	*he will part.*
partiremos,	*we shall part.*
partiréis,	*you will part.*
partirán,	*they will part.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

habré partido, *I shall have parted.* &c.

Imperative Mood.

parte tu,	*part thou.*
parta él,	*let him part.*

partid vosotros,	*part you.*
partan ellos,	*let them part.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

que parta,	*that I may part.*
partas,	*thou mayst part.*
parta,	*he may part.*
partamos,	*we may part.*
partais,	*you may part.*
partan,	*they may part.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

haya partido, *I may have parted.* &c.

First Imperfect.

aunque partiera,	*though I should part.*
partieras,	*thou shouldst part.*
partiera,	*he should part.*
partiéramos,	*we should part.*
partiérais,	*you should part.*
partieran,	*they should part.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

hubiera partido, *I should have parted.* &c.

Second Imperfect.

cuando partiese,	*when I should part.*
partieses,	*thou shouldst part.*
partiese,	*he should part.*
partiésemos,	*we should part.*
partiéseis,	*you should part.*
partiesen,	*they should part.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

hubiese partido, *I should have parted.* &c.

Conditional.

partiria,	*I would part.*
partirias,	*thou wouldst part.*
partiria,	*he would part.*
partiríamos,	*we would part.*
partiríais,	*you would part.*
partirian,	*they would part.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

habria partido, *I would have parted.* &c.

Future.

si partiere,	*if I should part.*
partieres,	*thou shouldst part.*
partiere,	*he should part.*
partiéremos,	*we should part.*
partiéreis,	*you should part.*
partieren,	*they should part.*

5. *Compound Tense.*

hubiere partido, *I should have parted.* &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	partir,	*to part.*
Preterite.	haber partido,	*to have parted.*
Future.	haber de partir,	*to have to part.*
Gerund.	partiendo,	*parting.*
Past part.	partido,	*parted.*
Fut. part.	habiendo partido,	*having parted.*

Observation on the preceding Models for Conjugation.

Those who are acquainted with the Spanish language, will perceive that the arrangement of tenses in the subjunctive mood here adopted, is different from that in any other Spanish grammar; the reasons for which I shall briefly state, and submit to the consideration of the reader. The Spanish Academy, after some ancient

grammarians, has associated the conditional tense with the two imperfects, making a triple tense, with dissimilar terminations, and of different uses; hence the necessity of establishing several rules in order to distinguish those three terminations, so unnecessarily blended together in a single imperfect tense. It may not be difficult for Spaniards, to whom the Academy addresses its Grammar, to discriminate and to apply properly each of these terminations; but this is not the case with foreigners, and particularly with English students, whose native language, though extremely energetic, is very deficient in, nay is almost deprived of, verbal inflections. To obviate this confusion various methods might be suggested. 1st. To place the termination *ria* for the imperfect, that of *ra* for the perfect, and the other in *se* for the pluperfect of the subjunctive. Thus *amaria*, *amara*, *amase*, would correspond to the Latin *amarem*, *amaverim*, and *amavissem*, from which those Spanish tenses are derived; but as these Latin tenses are more frequently expressed in Spanish by the compounds of the imperfect, it would be necessary to adopt new denominations. 2ndly. To place the termination *ria* as the conditional tense in the indicative, in imitation of the French and of many Italian grammars, and to leave the other two terminations of *ra* and *se* for the imperfect of the subjunctive, both being in most instances indifferently used the one for the other; but the conditional tense, depending always on another tense of the indicative in the same phrase, must necessarily belong to the subjunctive, and be subjected to the general rule for the important distinction of the moods. I have therefore thought it more convenient, for the explanation of the syntax of the verb, to put the termination *ra* as the first imperfect, the other in *se* as the second, and the last in *ria* as the conditional, all three in the subjunctive mood; and by this simple arrangement, the difficulties of distinguishing the proper use of the three terminations are in great part removed.

Section III.

Different methods of conjugating a Verb.

A verb, besides the active voice, may be conjugated *passively, reciprocally, negatively*, and *interrogatively.*

PASSIVE VERBS.

In the preceding conjugations the student will easily perceive that the active voice of the Spanish verbs very much resembles that of the Latin; but it is not the same with respect to the passive voice, which was abandoned about the seventh century, as likewise in all other European languages. In English there is only one way of supplying this deficiency, but in Spanish there are two passive forms. 1st. By adding to the tenses of the verb SER the participle of the active verb, with the masculine or feminine termination, and in the singular or plural, according to the gender and number of the subject, both in the simple and compound tenses. Ex.—

Soy amado, Soy amada,	*I am loved.*
Erais amados, Erais amadas,	*you were loved.*
Serás amado, Serás amada,	*thou wilt be loved.*
Seríamos amados, Seríamos amadas,	*we would be loved.*
Ha sido amado, Ha sido amada,	*thou hast been loved.*
Hemos sido amados, Hemos sido amadas,	*we have been loved.*

This passive form being the same in English, does not present any difficulty.

2dly. By placing the pronoun *se* either before or after the third person singular or plural of every tense; but the infinitive *se* must be affixed, so as to form a single word. The English does not admit this passive formation, which is so frequent and elegant in Spanish. Ex. —*dícese*, it is said; *narrábase*, it was related; *humilla-*

ranse, they will be humbled, &c., correspond exactly with *dicitur*, *narrabatur*, *humiliabuntur*, in Latin. But all the English passive sentences cannot be rendered indifferently by the first or second method just mentioned; some requiring the former, and others the latter. Their application will be easily known by attending to the following rule.

All English phrases in the passive which may be rendered active by changing the subject from a passive into an active signification, ought to be rendered in Spanish by the auxiliary verbs SER or ESTAR. Ex.—

Un hombre de bien es amado de todos.	*An honest man is beloved by all.*
Los pensamientos humanos son conocidos profundamente solo por Dios.	*The thoughts of men are thoroughly known only by God.*
Todos los ciudadanos están igualmente protejidos por la ley.	*All the citizens are equally protected by the law.*

All these and similar sentences ought to be rendered in the passive by *ser* or *estar*, because they may be changed into the active; as, All love an honest man; God only knows the thoughts of men; The law equally protects all citizens.

But when the English expression in the passive cannot be rendered active by inverting the phrase, it ought to be rendered by the pronoun *se*, an expression more elegant and congenial to the Spanish language. Ex.—

Se pasa la mitad de la vida antes de saber lo que es vivir.	*Life* is *half spent before we know what it is to live.*
Ganase mucho tiempo con levantarse siempre temprano.	*Much time* is *gained by always rising early.*
Abrióse el Parlamento en Septiembre 1832, y despues de repetidas y largas sesiones, y acalorados de-	*Parliament* was *opened in September* 1832, *and after repeated long sittings and angry debates, the Re-*

bates no pudo *pasarse* el Proyecto de Reforma. *Se* juntó otra vez al principio del año siguiente, y hubo una oposicion tan fuerte, que *se* temió volveria á *perderse*: sin embargo quedó sancionado.

form Bill could not be *carried. Early in the following year the parliament* was *re-opened, and the Bill again met with so strong an opposition that it* was *feared it would* be *lost: however it passed into a law.*

The English passive expressions in the above period cannot be rendered active, and are therefore translated in Spanish by the pronoun, which, if prefixed, is separated from the verb, but if affixed, makes of course a single word with it.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

All active verbs become reflective in Spanish by placing the pronouns *me, te, se,* and *nos, os, se,* either before or after all the persons, both singular and plural, in each tense, except the imperative, infinitive, and the gerund, when these pronouns are affixed to the verb, as will appear in the following conjugation of the verb *lavarse,* to wash oneself.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Me lavo,	*I wash myself.*
te lavas,	*thou washest thyself.*
se lava,	*he washes himself.*
nos lavamos,	*we wash ourselves.*
os lavais,	*you wash yourselves.*
se lavan,	*they wash themselves.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

me he lavado, *I have washed myself.* &c.

Preterimperfect.

me lavaba,	*I washed myself.*
te lavabas,	*thou washedst thyself.*
se lavaba,	*he washed himself.*

nos lavábamos,	*we washed ourselves.*
os lavábais,	*you washed yourselves.*
se lavaban,	*they washed themselves.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

me habia lavado, *I had washed myself.* &c.

Preterperfect.

me lavé,	*I washed myself.*
te lavaste,	*thou washedst thyself.*
se lavó,	*he washed himself.*
nos lavamos,	*we washed ourselves.*
os lavásteis,	*you washed yourselves.*
se lavaron,	*they washed themselves.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

me hube lavado, *I had washed myself.* &c.

Future.

me lavaré,	*I shall wash myself.*
te lavarás,	*thou wilt wash thyself.*
se lavará,	*he will wash himself.*
nos lavaremos,	*we shall wash ourselves.*
os lavareis,	*you will wash yourselves.*
se lavarán,	*they will wash themselves.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

me habré lavado, *I shall have washed myself.* &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

lávate tu,	*wash thyself.*
lávese él,	*let him be washed.*
lavaos vosotros,	*wash yourselves.*
lavense ellos,	*let them be washed.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

que me lave,	*that I may wash myself.*
te laves,	*thou mayst wash thyself.*
se lave,	*he may wash himself.*

nos lavemos,	*we may wash ourselves.*
os laveis,	*you may wash yourselves.*
se laven,	*they may wash themselves.*

1. *Compound Tense.*

que me haya lavado, { *that I may have washed myself.* &c.

First Imperfect.

aunque me lavara,	*though I should wash myself.*
te lavaras,	*thou shouldst wash thyself.*
se lavara,	*he should wash himself.*
nos laváramos,	*we should wash ourselves.*
os lavárais,	*you should wash yourselves.*
se laváran,	*they should wash themselves.*

2. *Compound Tense.*

aunque me hubiera lavado, { *though I should have washed myself.* &c.

Second Imperfect.

cuando me lavase,	*when I should wash myself.*
te lavases,	*thou shouldst wash thyself.*
se lavase,	*he should wash himself.*
nos lavásemos,	*we should wash ourselves.*
os lavaseis,	*you should wash yourselves.*
se lavasen,	*they should wash themselves.*

3. *Compound Tense.*

cuando me hubiese lavado, { *when I should have washed myself.* &c.

Conditional.

me lavaria,	*I would wash myself.*
te lavarias,	*thou wouldst wash thyself.*
se lavaria,	*he would wash himself.*

nos lavariamos,	*we would wash ourselves.*
os lavaríais,	*you would wash yourselves.*
se lavarian,	*they would wash themselves.*

4. *Compound Tense.*

me habria lavado, *I would have washed myself.* &c.

Future.

si me lavare,	*if I should wash myself.*
te lavares,	*thou shouldst wash thyself.*
se lavare,	*he should wash himself.*
nos laváremos,	*we should wash ourselves.*
os laváreis,	*you should wash yourselves.*
se lavaren,	*they should wash themselves.*

5. *Compound Tense.*

si me hubiere lavado, *if I should have washed myself.* &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	lavarse,	*to wash oneself.*
Preterite.	haberse lavado,	*to have washed oneself.*
Future.	haberse de lavar,	*to have to wash oneself.*
Gerund.	lavándose,	*washing oneself.*
Past part.	lavádose,	*washed.*
Fut. part.	habiendose de lavar,	*having to wash oneself.*

The gerund may assume the three pronouns, both in the singular and in the plural, in the following manner:

lavándome,	*washing myself.*
lavándote,	*washing thyself.*
lavándose,	*washing himself.*
lavándonos,	*washing ourselves.*
lavándoos,	*washing yourselves.*
lavándose,	*washing themselves.*

Future participle.

habiéndome lavado,	*having washed myself.*
habiéndote lavado,	*having washed thyself.*
habiéndose lavado,	*having washed himself.*

habiéndonos lavado, *having washed ourselves.*
habiéndoos lavado, *having washed yourselves.*
habiéndose lavado, *having washed themselves.*

There are in Spanish many neuter verbs used as reflective, as *andarse, curarse, darse, entrarse, escaparse, morirse, volverse, &c.*, as may be seen in the following examples.

El pobre *se* volvió á su casa, y murió*se* de hambre.
The poor man returned home, and died of starvation.

Se encontró al ladron, y *se* le puso en la carcel, pero escapó*se* á la noche.
The thief was found, and was put in prison, but he escaped in the night.

Presentó*se* el coronel, y mandó á los soldados que *se* retirasen al cuartel.
The colonel came, and ordered the soldiers to retire to the barracks.

VERBS WITH NEGATION.

In English the negative adverb *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb in the compound tenses; but in Spanish the negative *no* must always precede, not only the simple but also the auxiliary verb. The conjugation of one tense will be a model for the others.

Present Indicative of the verb DECIR, *to say.*

Yo no digo eso, *I do not say that.*
tu no dices eso, *thou dost not say that.*
el no dice eso, *he does not say that.*

nosotros no decimos eso, *we do not say that.*
vosotros no decís eso, *you do not say that.*
ellos no dicen eso, *they do not say that.*

Compound Tense.

no he dicho eso, *I have not said that.*
no has dicho eso, *thou hast not said that.*
no ha dicho eso, *he has not said that.*

no hemos dicho eso, *we have not said that.*
no habeis dicho eso, *you have not said that.*
no han dicho eso, *they have not said that.*

The most essential difference between the two languages in this respect is, that two negative words in Spanish give additional energy, and strengthen the negation; as, *No* pido *nada*, I ask nothing; el *no* culpa á *nadie*, he does not blame any one; *no* ofendas á *ninguno*, do not offend any person; *no* hablan *jamás*, they never speak, &c. But if the second negative adverb precedes the verb, the adverb *no* must be omitted, and we must say, *nada pido, á nadie culpa, á ninguno ofende, jamás hablan.* The English position that "two negatives make an affirmative," is only true in Spanish, as in ancient and other modern languages, when the second negation necessarily destroys the first by its relation to the other, as in the following instances; I am not ignorant, he was not unprepared, she will not be inexorable, &c.: *No estoy ignorante, no estaba desprevenido, no será inexorable, &c.* But when a negation does not directly affect the other, that assertion is not exactly true, as for instance; *No puedo permitirlo de ninguna manera*, I can by no means allow it. This sentence is in both languages as perfectly negative as it can be. Again: 'She was not only unwilling to marry him, but even threatened to destroy herself if any force were used to her.' Here are also two negatives, but, far from forming an affirmation, the negation is strengthened. It is a pleonasm, very seldom used in English, but very frequent in Spanish.

VERBS WITH INTERROGATION.

When the sentence is interrogative, Spaniards place the personal pronoun after the verb, as in English; *Tiene vm. que hacer?* are you engaged? *Quiere vm. comer conmigo hoy?* will you dine with me today? &c.

In the compound tenses the English has the noun or pronoun after the auxiliary and before the participle; but in Spanish the noun or pronoun must be placed after the participle, it being a general rule in that language that the participle and the auxiliary shall not be separated. Have *you* heard that? *ha oido* vm. *eso?* have *they* agreed to the contract? *han convenido* ellos *en el contrato?*

When there is a negation and an interrogation in the sentence, the Spanish must begin with the negation, and the pronoun may be either expressed or not after the verb. Do *you not* recognise me? no *me reconoce* vm.? Had *you not* been there before? no *habia estado* vm. *allí antes*?

If the noun or pronoun were always expressed in Spanish, the interrogative sense would be easily perceived, both in conversation and in writing; but the personal pronouns being generally omitted, except *vm.*, (*you*, in polite conversation,) the interrogation must be indicated either by the inflection of the voice, or by an inverted mark of interrogation at the beginning of the phrase, as has been observed at page 9; otherwise the interrogative sense would not be readily understood.

Ha leido vm. el Quijote?	*Have you read Don Quixote?*
No ha leido vm. la Historia de Méjico por Solis?	*Have you not read the History of Mexico by Solis?*
¿Ha llegado el correo?	*Is the post arrived?*
¿Le ha traido cartas?	*Has it brought letters for you?*
Ha llegado el paquebote.	*The packet is arrived.*
Le han mandado cartas.	*They have sent letters to him.*

In the first and second sentences no inverted mark is necessary, because the pronoun *vm.* is expressed after the verb; in the third and fourth the inverted mark is necessary, because the pronoun is omitted; the fifth phrase is affirmative in writing, but it is made interrogative by the inflection of the voice; and the sixth may be also affirmative or interrogative according to the accent in pronunciation: if the voice drops at the last word, it is affirmative, and means *that the packet has brought letters for somebody*; but if the tone of the voice remains inflexible in pronouncing the last word, the sense is interrogative, and means, "have they sent letters to you?"

A Display of regular Verbal Terminations.

First Conjugation in AR. *Gerund* ando; *Part.* ado.

		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Indicative.	*Present.*	o	as	a	amos	ais	an
	Imperf.	aba	abas	aba	ábamos	ábais	aban
	Perfect.	é	aste	ó	amos	ásteis	aron
	Future.	aré	arás	ará	arémos	aréis	arán
Imperative.			a	e		ad	en
Subjunctive.	*Present.*	e	es	e	emos	eis	en
	1st Imperf.	ara	aras	ara	áramos	árais	aran
	2nd Imperf.	ase	ases	ase	ásemos	áseis	asen
	Conditional.	aria	arias	aria	aríamos	aríais	arian
	Future.	are	ares	are	áremos	áreis	aren

Second Conjugation in ER. *Gerund* iendo; *Part.* ido.

Indicative.	*Present.*	o	es	e	emos	eis	en
	Imperfect.	ia	ias	ia	íamos	íais	ian
	Perfect.	í	iste	ió	imos	ísteis	iéron
	Future.	eré	erás	erá	erémos	eréis	erán
Imperative.			e	a		ed	an
Subjunctive.	*Present.*	a	as	a	amos	ais	an
	1st Imperf.	iera	ieras	iera	iéramos	iérais	ieran
	2nd Imperf.	iese	ieses	iese	iésemos	iéseis	iesen
	Conditional.	eria	erias	eria	eríamos	eríais	erian
	Future.	iere	ieres	iere	iéremos	iéreis	ieren

Third Conjugation in IR. *Gerund* iendo; *Part.* ido.

Indicative.	*Present.*	o	es	e	imos	ís	en
	Imperf.	ia	ias	ia	íamos	íais	ian
	Perfect.	í	iste	ió	imos	ísteis	ieron
	Future.	iré	irás	irá	irémos	iréis	irán
Imperative.			e	a		id	an
Subjunctive.	*Present.*	a	as	a	amos	ais	an
	1st Imperf.	iera	ieras	iera	iéramos	iérais	ieran
	2nd Imperf.	iese	ieses	iese	iésemos	iéseis	iesen
	Conditional.	iria	irias	iria	iríamos	iríais	irian
	Future.	iere	ieres	iere	iéremos	iéreis	ieren

Observations on the preceding Table.

I. Some regular verbs deviate a little from the terminations in the above Table, in order to retain the primitive sound of their infinitives. Thus, *buscar* to look for, *juzgar* to judge, &c., make the third persons of the imperative, and all the persons of the present subjunctive, *busque, busques*; *juzgue, juzgues*, &c. *Vencer* to conquer, *venzo, venza*; *zurcir* to darn, *zurzo, zurza*, &c.; *delinquir* to transgress, *delinco, delinca*, &c. And those who still write *coger, elegir, fingir*, &c., instead of *cojer, elejir, finjir*, must change the *g* into *j* in the present tenses, as, *cojo, coja*; *elijo, elija*; *finjo, finja*, &c., which is nothing more than changing one letter for another, to keep the sound uniform through all the tenses.

II. Those verbs which have a final vowel in their root, as *argüir*, *caer*, *leer*, *creer*, &c., require the change of the first *i*, in the presents, the third person of the perfect, the two imperfects, and the future of the subjunctive, into *y* consonant; as, *arguyó, arguyeron*; *arguyera, arguyese*; *leyó, leyeron, leyera, leyese*, &c., and thus a diphthong is avoided.

The student, after reading the preceding observations, will conjugate several verbs through all their tenses in each of the modes above explained. The best practice will be to join two or three verbs of different terminations in a sentence, in the following manner:—

1. He comprado un caballo y estoy contento con él, *I have bought a horse, and I am pleased with him.*

Has comprado un caballo, y estas contento, &c.

2. Soy pobre, pero estoy acostumbrado á vivir con poco, *I am poor, but I am accustomed to live upon little.*

Eres pobre, pero estás acostumbrado, &c.

3. Me he casado, y soy feliz en compañia de mi muger, *I have just married, and am happy in the company of my wife.*

Te has casado, y eres feliz, &c.

4. He empleado mi dinero, y no tengo mas, *I have spent my money, and have no more.*

Has empleado tu dinero, y no tienes mas, &c.

5. Si tengo salud y amigos, por qué me he de quejar de mi estado? *If I enjoy health and have friends, why should I complain of my situation?*

Si tienes salud y amigos, por qué te has de quejar, &c.

6. Respeto las leyes, no ofendo á nadie, y sirvo á mi patria, *I respect the laws, I offend no one, and I serve my country.*

Respetas las leyes, no ofendes á nadie, y sirves á tu patria, &c.

7. Gano mucho, pero poseo poco, porque todo lo distribuyo, *I gain much, but possess little, because I distribute all.*

Ganas mucho, pero posees poco, porque todo lo distribuyes, &c.

8. Leo bastante, medito algo, pero no escribo nada, *I read enough, think a little, but I write nothing at all.*

Lees bastante, meditas algo, pero no escribes nada, &c.

These and similar sentences, by varying the terminations and the cases of the pronouns, will contribute much to master speedily all the difficulties of this most important part of the Spanish language.

The student will find a list of regular verbs subjoined for this purpose.

Regular Verbs for Exercise.

1*st Conjugation.*

Abarcar, *to clasp.*
abrazar, *to embrace.*
acabar, *to finish.*
acariciar, *to caress.*
aconsejar, *to advise.*
adular, *to flatter.*
afear, *to deform.*
afeitar, *to shave.*
afilar, *to sharpen.*
agarrar, *to grasp.*
agradar, *to please.*
ahorrar, *to spare.*
alabar, *to praise.*
alhajar, *to furnish.*
Bañar, *to bathe.*
barrenar, *to bore.*
besar, *to kiss.*
borrar, *to blot.*
brillar, *to shine.*
brotar, *to bud.*
burlar, *to jeer.*
buscar, *to search.*
Callar, *to keep silence.*
caminar, *to travel.*
captar, *to attract.*
cargar, *to load.*
cavar, *to dig.*
cecear, *to lisp.*

cenar, *to sup.*
cercar, *to inclose.*
charlar, *to prattle.*
chillar, *to squeak.*
chupar, *to suck.*
clamar, *to cry out.*
colmar, *to heap up.*
cotejar, *to compare.*
culpar, *to blame.*
curar, *to heal.*
Dañar, *to hurt.*
desafiar, *to challenge.*
despejar, *to clear out.*
dejar, *to leave.*
disfrazar, *to disguise.*
disimular, *to dissemble.*
distar, *to be far off.*
domar, *to tame.*
dorar, *to gild.*
Echar, *to throw.*
empapar, *to soak.*
empeñar, *to pawn.*
enfadar, *to vex.*
enfermar, *to sicken.*
engañar, *to deceive.*
engordar, *to fatten.*
enredar, *to entangle.*
ensalzar, *to extol.*
ensayar, *to assay.*
enterar, *to inform.*
enviar, *to send.*
extraviar, *to mislead.*
Fabricar, *to build.*
fiar, *to trust.*
firmar, *to sign.*
fumar, *to smoke.*
Ganar, *to gain.*
gastar, *to spend.*
golpear, *to beat.*
gotear, *to drop.*
guardar, *to keep.*
guerrear, *to war.*
guisar, *to cook.*
gustar, *to taste.*
Hablar, *to speak.*
hallar, *to find.*
honrar, *to honour.*
hurtar, *to steal.*
Idear, *to form an idea.*
ignorar, *not to know.*
inflamar, *to kindle.*
inquietar, *to disturb.*
instar, *to urge.*
Juntar, *to join.*
juzgar, *to judge.*
Ladrar, *to bark.*
levantar, *to raise.*
lidiar, *to contend.*
ligar, *to allay.*
limpiar, *to clean.*
llamar, *to call.*
llegar, *to arrive.*
llenar, *to fill.*
llevar, *to carry.*
llorar, *to weep.*
Madrugar, *to rise early.*
madurar, *to ripen.*
manchar, *to stain.*
matar, *to kill.*
mejorar, *to improve.*
mirar, *to look.*
mojar, *to wet.*
Nadar, *to swim.*
nombrar, *to name.*
Obrar, *to work.*
obstar, *to hinder.*
orar, *to pray.*
osar, *to dare.*
Palpar, *to feel.*
parar, *to stop.*

pasear, *to walk.*
pecar, *to sin.*
pesar, *to weigh.*
pisar, *to tread.*
porfiar, *to dispute.*
prestar, *to lend.*
Rayar, *to rule.*
remedar, *to mimic.*
Soplar, *to blow.*
Tachar, *to blame.*
tardar, *to delay.*
Vaciar, *to empty.*
velar, *to wake.*

2nd Conjugation.

Acojer, *to give asylum.*
acometer, *to assault.*
Barrer, *to sweep.*
beber, *to drink.*
Ceder, *to yield.*
cojer, *to catch.*
comer, *to eat.*
conceder, *to concede.*
correr, *to run.*
Deber, *to owe.*
Exceder, *to exceed.*
Leer, *to read.*
Ofender, *to offend.*
Poseer, *to possess.*
pender, *to hang over.*
prender, *to imprison.*
proveer, *to provide.*
Recojer, *to gather.*
responder, *to answer.*
rever, *to review.*
roer, *to gnaw.*
romper, *to break.*
Tejer, *to weave.*
Vender, *to sell.*
ver, *to see.*

3rd Conjugation.

Abrir, *to open.*
admitir, *to admit.*
aflijir, *to afflict.*
añadir, *to add.*
aturdir, *to confound.*
Batir, *to shake.*
bruñir, *to polish.*
Comprimir, *to compress.*
confundir, *to confound.*
consistir, *to consist.*
cumplir, *to execute.*
Definir, *to define.*
desistir, *to desist.*
difundir, *to diffuse.*
discutir, *to discuss.*
Escupir, *to spit.*
esgrimir, *to fence.*
evadir, *to evade.*
exijir, *to exact.*
exprimir, *to express.*
Finjir, *to dissemble.*
fundir, *to melt.*
Hundir, *to sink.*
Imprimir, *to impress.*
Latir, *to beat* (as the pulse).
Mujir, *to bellow.*
Nutrir, *to nourish.*
Parir, *to lie-in.*
percudir, *to spoil.*
Resarcir, *to compensate.*
rujir, *to roar.*
Subir, *to go up.*
sufrir, *to suffer.*
surtir, *to supply.*
Unjir, *to anoint.*
urdir, *to warp.*
Vivir, *to live.*
Zabullir, *to dip.*

Section IV.

Of the Irregular Verbs.

There are some verbs which either vary in their roots, or deviate in the inflection of their tenses, from the system of terminations given in the preceding table, page 117. The number of these irregular verbs in Spanish is very great. They are not less than 530; and by increasing the variety of terminations, always more harmonious than they would be in a regular conjugation, they have contributed to the richness of the language. The difficulty, however, of learning these verbs is not so great as their number would lead a foreigner to suppose. There are so many of the same irregularity, the irregularity of others is so easy, and so many derivatives correspond with their primitives, that there is scarcely a score of these irregular verbs which require the attention of the student. I shall divide them into two sections: 1st, Those that have a common irregularity: 2nd, Those of an individual irregularity.

Division 1.

Verbs of a common Irregularity.

Class I.

This irregularity is common to some verbs of the first and second conjugation: it consists simply in taking an *i* before the last *e* of the root, if there is more than one, in all the persons of the present indicative, imperative, and subjunctive,—the first and second persons of the plural always excepted.

Examples.

TENTAR, *to try.* PERDER, *to lose.*

Present Indicative.

tiento, tientas, tienta; tentamos, tentais, *tientan.*
pierdo, pierdes, pierde; perdemos, perdeis, *pierden.*

Imperative.

tienta, tiente;——tentad, *tienten.*
pierde, pierda;——perded, *pierdan.*

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

tiente, tientes, tiente; tentemos, tenteis, *tienten.*
pierda, pierdas, pierda; perdamos, perdais, *pierdan.*

The following verbs have the same irregularity.

First Conjugation.

Acertar, *to guess.*
acrecentar, *to increase.*
adestrar, *to make fit.*
alentar, *to encourage.*
apacentar, *to feed cattle.*
apretar, *to tighten.*
arrendar, *to hire.*
asentarse, *to sit down.*
atestar, *to cram.*
aterrar, *to terrify.*
atravesar, *to cross.*
aventar, *to fan.*
Calentar, *to warm.*
cegar, *to blind.*
cerrar, *to shut.*
cimentar, *to lay foundations.*
comenzar, *to commence.*
concertar, *to agree.*
confesar, *to confess.*
Decentar, *to make the first cut.*
derrengar, *to break the back.*
despertar, *to awake.*
despernar, *to take off the legs.*
desterrar, *to exile.*
Empedrar, *to pave.*
empezar, *to begin.*
encerrar, *to shut up.*
encomendar, *to recommend.*
enmendar, *to correct.*
enterrar, *to bury.*
escarmentar, *to learn by experience.*
Fregar, *to scrub.*
Gobernar, *to govern.*
Herrar, *to shoe* (horses).
helar, *to freeze.*
Invernar, *to winter.*
Mentar, *to mention.*
merendar, *to take luncheon.*
Negar, *to deny.*
Pensar, *to think.*
Quebrar, *to break.*
Recomendar, *to recommend.*
reventar, *to burst.*
Segar, *to reap corn.*
sembrar, *to sow.*
sentarse, *to sit down.*
serrar, *to saw.*
Temblar, *to tremble.*
tropezar, *to stumble.*

And their compounds, as *denegar, desalentar,* &c.

Second Conjugation.

Atender, *to attend.*
Cerner, *to sift.*
contender, *to contend.*
Defender, *to defend.*
Encender, *to light.*
entender, *to understand.*

Heder, *to stink.*
hender, *to cleave.*
Tender, *to spread out.*
trascender, *to transcend.*
Verter, *to shed.*

And their compounds, as *contender, estender,* &c.

Class II.

This irregularity is common to some verbs of the third conjugation: it consists in taking an *i* before the last *e* of their root in the present tenses, like the preceding class, and in changing the *e* into *i* in the third persons of the perfect indicative, in all the persons of the two imperfects, and in the future of the subjunctive. Ex.—

SENTIR, *to feel.*

Indicative.

Present. *siento, sientes, siente*; sentimos, sentís, *sienten.*
Perfect. sentí, sentiste, *sintió*; sentimos, sentísteis, *sintieron.*

Imperative.

siente, sienta;——sentid, *sientan.*

Subjunctive.

Present. *sienta, sientas, sienta*; *sintamos, sintais, sientan.*
1st Imp. *sintiera, sintieras, sintiera*; *sintiéramos, sintiérais, sintieran.*
2nd Imp. *sintiese, sintieses, sintiese*; *sintiésemos, sintiéseis, sintiesen.*
Future. *sintiére, sintieres, sintiere*; *sintiéremos, sintiéreis, sintieren.*

The following verbs have the same irregularity.

Adherir, *to adhere.*
advertir, *to advert.*
arrepentirse, *to repent.*
Conferir, *to confer.*
controvertir, *to controvert.*
convertir, *to convert.*
Deferir, *to defer.*
diferir, *to delay.*
digerir, *to digest.*
Herir, *to wound.*
hervir, *to boil.*
Ingerir, *to graft.*

invertir, *to invert.*
Mentir, *to lie.*
Referir, *to refer.*
requerir, *to require.*

And their compounds, as *consentir, desmentir,* &c.

Class III.

This irregularity is common to some verbs of the first and second conjugation: it consists in changing the radical *o* into *ue* in all the persons of the present indicative, imperative, and subjunctive, the first and second persons plural always excepted. Ex.—

COSTAR, *to cost*; MOVER, *to move.*

Indicative.

Present.

cuesto, cuestas, cuesta; costamos, costais, *cuestan.*
muevo, mueves, mueve; movemos, moveis, *mueven.*

Imperative.

cuesta, cueste;——costad, *cuesten.*
mueve, mucva;——moved, *muevan.*

Subjunctive.

Present.

cueste, cuestes, cueste; costemos, costeis, *cuesten.*
mueva, muevas, mueva; movamos, movais, *muevan.*

The following verbs have the same irregularity.

First Conjugation.

Acordar, *to agree.*
agorar, *to augur.*
almorzar, *to breakfast.*
amolar, *to whet.*
apostar, *to lay wagers.*
aprobar, *to approve.*
asolar, *to raze.*
avergonzar, *to be ashamed.*
Colar, *to strain.*
consolar, *to console.*
contar, *to relate.*
Descollar, *to excel.*
desollar, *to flay.*
Emporcar, *to soil.*
encordar, *to string musical instruments.*
encontrar, *to find.*
engrosar, *to engross.*
Forzar, *to force.*
Holgar, *to rest from labour.*

hollar, *to trample.*
Mostrar, to *show.*
Poblar, *to people.*
probar, *to prove.*
Regoldar, *to belch.*
renovar, *to renew.*
rescontrar, *to balance in accounts.*
resollar, *to breathe.*
rodar, *to move on wheels.*
Soldar, *to solder.*
soltar, *to let go.*
sonar, *to sound.*
soñar, *to dream.*
Tostar, *to toast.*
trocar, *to barter.*
tronar, *to thunder.*
Volar, *to fly.*
volcar, *to overset.*

And their compounds, as *comprobar*, *revolcar*, &c.

Second Conjugation.

Absolver, *to absolve.*
Cocer, *to cook.*
Disolver, *to dissolve.*
doler, *to ache.*
Llover, *to rain.*
Moler, *to grind.*
morder, *to bite.*
Oler, *to smell.*
Soler, *to be wont.*
Torcer, *to twist.*
Volver, *to return.*

And their compounds, as *demoler*, *promover*, &c.

Class IV.

This irregularity is common to those verbs of the second conjugation that end in *acer*, *ecer*, and *ocer*: it consists in adding *z* before the *c* of the root, in the first person singular present indicative, in the third person imperative, and in all persons of the present subjunctive, in order to avoid the dull sound of *conoco*, *conoca*, *ofreco*, *ofreca*, substituting the more agreeable one of *conozco* I know, *conozca* that I may know; *ofrezco* I offer, *ofrezca* that I may offer, &c. Ex.—

NACER, *to be born*; PERECER, *to perish.*

Indicative.

Present.

nazco, naces, nace; nacemos, naceis, nacen.
perezco, pereces, perece; perecemos, -eis, -ecen.

IMPERATIVE.

nace, *nazca*;——naced, *nazcan*.
perece, *perezca*;——pereced, *perezcan*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

nazca, nazcas, nazca; *nazcamos, nazcais, nazcan.*
perezca, perezcas, perezca; *perezcamos, perezcais, perezcan.*

The following verbs have the same irregularity.

Abastecer, *to furnish provisions.*
aborrecer, *to hate.*
adolecer, *to sicken.*
adormecerse, *to grow drowsy.*
agradecer, *to thank.*
amanecer, *to dawn.*
anochecer, *to grow dark.*
aparecer, *to appear.*
apetecer, *to long for.*
Canecer, *to become grey.*
carecer, *to be deprived of.*
compadecerse, *to pity.*
comparecer, *to come before.*
complacer, *to give pleasure.*
conocer, *to know.*
convalecer, *to recover.*
crecer, *to grow.*
Desaparecer, *to disappear.*
descaecer, *to droop.*
desconocer, *to disown.*
desfallecer, *to pine.*
deslucir, *to tarnish.*
Embrabecerse, *to become furious.*
embrutecerse, *to become brutal.*
emplumecer, *to become fledged.*
empobrecer, *to impoverish.*
encalvecer, *to become bald.*
encallecer, *to render callous.*
encarecer, *to become dearer.*
encrudecerse, *to become raw.*
encruelecer, *to instigate to cruelties.*
endentecer, *to cut the teeth.*
endurecer, *to harden.*
enflaquecer, *to grow lean.*
enfurecerse, *to become furious.*
engrandecer, *to aggrandize.*
enloquecer, *to become mad.*
enlucir, *to whitewash.*
enmohecerse, *to grow mouldy.*
enmudecer, *to become dumb.*
ennegrecer, *to blacken.*
ennoblecer, *to ennoble.*
enrarecer, *to rarify.*
enriquecer, *to enrich.*
ensoberbecerse, *to become haughty.*

entallecer, *to sprout.*
enternecer, *to soften.*
entomecer, *to swell.*
entorpecer, *to benumb.*
entristecerse, *to become sad.*
entullecer, *to become crippled.*
entumecer, *to rise high.*
envejecer, *to grow old.*
enverdecer, *to grow green.*
escarnecer, *to scoff.*
establecer, *to establish.*
estremecerse, *to shudder.*
Fallecer, *to die.*
favorecer, *to favour.*
fenecer, *to terminate.*
florecer, *to blossom.*
fortalecer, *to fortify.*
Guarnecer, *to garnish.*
Humedecer, *to moisten.*
Lucir, *to shine.*
Merecer, *to merit.*
Negrecer, *to grow black.*
Obedecer, *to obey.*
ofrecer, *to offer.*
oscurecer, *to darken.*
Pacer, *to graze.*
padecer, *to suffer.*
parecer, *to seem.*
perecer, *to perish.*
pertenecer, *to belong to.*
prevalecer, *to prevail.*
Reconocer, *to acknowledge.*
reverdecer, *to grow green.*

And their compounds, as *desplacer, desobedecer, relucir*, &c.

Class V.

This irregularity is common to some verbs of the third conjugation: it consists in changing the last *e* of their root into *i* in all the present tenses, in the third persons of the perfect indicative, and imperative, and in the two imperfects and the future of the subjunctive. Ex.—

PEDIR, *to ask.*

Indicative.

Present. *pido, pides, pide*; pedimos, pedís, *piden.*
Perf. pedí, pediste, *pidió*; pedimos, pedisteis, *pidieron.*

Imperative.

pide, pida;——pedid, *pidan.*

Subjunctive.

Present. *pida, pidas, pida*; *pidamos, pidais, pidan.*
1st Imp. *pidiera, -ieras, -iera*; *-iéramos, -iérais, -ieran.*
2nd Imp. *pidiese, -ieses, -iese*; *-iésemos, -iéseis, -iesen.*
Future. *pidiere, -ieres, -iere*; *-iéremos, -iéreis, -ieren.*

The following verbs have the same irregularities:

Ceñir, *to gird.*	Heñir, *to knead.*
colejir, *to infer.*	Medir, *to measure.*
competir, *to rival.*	Rejir, *to rule.*
concebir, *to conceive.*	reir, *to laugh.*
costreñir, *to constrain.*	rendir, *to subdue.*
Derretir, *to melt.*	reñir, *to quarrel.*
desleir, *to dilute.*	Seguir, *to follow.*
Elejir, *to select.*	servir, *to serve.*
engreir, *to make pert.*	Teñir, *to dye.*
Freir, *to fry.*	Vestir, *to dress.*
Gemir, *to groan.*	

And their compounds, as *conseguir*, *despedir*, &c.

Class VI.

This irregularity is common to those verbs of the third conjugation that end in *ducir*. It is the same as in the preceding class, and for the same reason; but these verbs have other irregularities, in imitation of the corresponding Latin verbs; such as changing the radical *c* into *x* in the preterperfect indicative, the two imperfects, and the future of the subjunctive; thus, *conducir*, to lead, makes *conduxe*, I led; *conduxera* and *conduxese*, I might lead; *conduxere*, if I should lead, &c. But the student will recollect that the *x* is now changed into *j*, for the reason stated at page 8. Ex.—

TRADUCIR, *to translate.*

Indicative.

Present. *traduzco*, traduces, traduce; traducimos, traducís, traducen.
Perfect. *traduje*, *-ujiste*, *-ujo*; *-ujimos*, *-ujisteis*, *-ujeron.*

Imperative.

traduce, *traduzca*;——traducid, *traduzcan.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *traduzca, -uzcas, -uzca*; *-uzcamos, -uzcais, -uzcan.*
1st Imp. *tradujera, -ujeras, -ujera*; *-ujéramos, -ujérais, -ujeran.*
2nd Imp. *tradujese, -ujeses, -ujese*; *ujésemos, -ujéseis, -ujesen.*
Future. *tradujere, -ujeres, -ujere*; *-ujéremos, -ujéreis, -ujeren.*

The following verbs have the same irregularities:

Conducir, *to conduce.* Producir, *to produce.*
Inducir, *to induce.* Reducir, *to reduce.*
Introducir, *to introduce.*

And their compounds, as *reconducir, reproducir*, &c.

To these six classes all verbs of a common irregularity may be reduced; and when the student studies them, he will recollect, 1st, That the first and second persons in the plurals of the present indicative are always, and in the subjunctive are generally, regular; 2ndly, That when the perfect is irregular, the two imperfects and the future subjunctive must follow the same irregularity; 3dly, That the conditional is constantly of the same irregularity as the future indicative.

DIVISION 2.

Verbs of an individual Irregularity.

Each of the following verbs has an irregularity peculiar to itself: they are placed here alphabetically; and for brevity sake, only those tenses which are irregular will be given.

1. ANDAR, *to walk.* *G.* andando, *P.* andado.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect. anduve, -iste, -o; anduvimos, -ísteis, -ieron.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1st Imp. anduviera, -eras, -era; -éramos, -érais, -eran.
2nd Imp. anduviese, -eses, -ese; -ésemos, -éseis, -esen.
Future. anduviere, -eres, -ere; -éremos, -éreis, -eren.

2. ASIR, *to seize.* *G.* asiendo, *P.* asido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. asgo, ases, ase; asimos, asís, asen.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. ase, asga;——asid, asgan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. asga, asgas, asga; asgamos, asgais, asgan.

3. CABER, *to be capable of being contained in.* *G.* cabiendo, *P.* cabido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. quepo, cabes, cabe; cabemos, cabeis, caben.
Perf. cupe, cupiste, cupo; cupimos, cupísteis, cupieron.
Fut. cabré, cabrás, cabrá; cabremos, cabreis, cabrán.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. cabe, quepa;——cabed, quepan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. quepa, quepas, quepa; -amos, -ais, -an.
1st Imp. cupiera, -ieras, -iera; -iéramos, -iérais, -ieran.
2nd Imp. cupiese, -ieses, -iese; -iésemos,- iéseis, -iesen.
Condit. cabria, -ias, -ia; -íamos, -íais, -ian.
Future. cupiere, -ieres, -iere; -iéremos, -iéreis, -ieren.

4. CAER, *to fall.* *G.* cayendo, *P.* caido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. caigo, caes, cae; caemos, caeis, caen.
Perfect. caí, caiste, cayó; caimos, caísteis, cayeron.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. cae, caiga;——caed, caigan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. caiga, caigas, caiga; caigamos, caigais, caigan.
1*st Imp.* cayera, -eras, -era; cayeramos, -erais, -eran.
2*nd Imp.* cayese, -eses, -ese; cayesemos, -eseis, -esen.
Future. cayere, -eres, -ere; cayeremos, -ereis, -eren.

5. DAR, *to give.* *G.* dando, *P.* dado.

INDICATIVE.

Present. doy, das, da; damos, dais, dan.
Perfect. dí, diste, dió; dimos, dísteis, dieron.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1*st Imp.* diera, dieras, diera; diéramos, diérais, dieran.
2*nd Imp.* diese, dieses, diese; diésemos, diéseis, diesen.
Future. diere, dieres, diere; diéremos, diéreis, dieren.

6. DECIR, *to say.* *G.* diciendo, *P.* dicho.

INDICATIVE.

Present. digo, dices, dice; decimos, decís, dicen.
Perfect. dije, dijiste, dijo; dijimos, dijísteis, dijeron.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. di, diga;——decid, digan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. diga, digas, diga; digamos, digais, digan.
1*st Imp.* dijera, -eras, -era; dijéramos, -érais, -eran.
2*nd Imp.* dijese, -eses, -ese; dijésemos, -éseis, -esen.
Future. dijere, -eres, -ere: dijéremos, -éreis, -eren.

7. DORMIR, *to sleep.* *G.* durmiendo, *P.* dormido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. duermo, duermes, duerme; dormimos, dormís, duermen.
Perfect. dormi, dormiste, durmió; dormimos, dormísteis, durmieron.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. duerme, duerma;——dormid, duerman.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. duerma, -as, -a; dormamos, dormais, duerman.
1st Imp. durmiera, -as, -a; durmiéramos,- érais, -eran.
2nd Imp. durmiese, -es, -e; durmiésemos, -éseis, -esen.
Future. durmiere, -es, -e; durmiéremos, -éreis, -eren.

8. HACER, *to make.* *G.* haciendo, *P.* hecho.

INDICATIVE.

Present. hago, haces, hace; hacemos, haceis, hacen.
Perfect. hice, hiciste, hizo; hicimos, hicísteis, hicieron.
Future. haré, harás, hará; harémos, harréis, harrán.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. haz, haga;——haced, hagan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. haga, hagas, haga; hagamos, hagais, hagan.
1st Imp. hiciera, -eras, -era; hiciéramos, -erais, -eran.
2nd Imp. hiciese, -eses. -ese; hiciésemos, -eseis, -esen.
Condit. haria, harias, haria; haríamos, haríais, harian.
Future. hiciere, -eres, -ere; hiciéremos, -ereis, -eren.

9. IR, *to go.* *G.* yendo, *P.* ido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. voy, vas, va; vamos, vais, van.
Imperf. iba, ibas, iba; íbamos, íbais, iban.
Perfect. fuí, fuiste, fué; fuimos, fuísteis, fueron.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. ve, vaya;——id, vayan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. vaya, vayas, vaya; vayamos, vayais, vayan.
1st Imp. fuera, -as, -a; fuéramos, -érais, -eran.
2nd Imp. fuese, -es, -e; fuésemos, -éseis, -esen.
Future. fuere, -es, -e; fuéremos, -éreis, -eren.

10. JUGAR, *to play.* *G.* jugando, *P.* jugado.

INDICATIVE.

Present. juego, juegas, juega; jugamos, jugais, juegan.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. juega, juegue;——jugad, jueguen.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. juegue, juegues, juegue; juguemos, jugueis, jueguen.

11. OIR, *to hear.* *G.* oyendo, *P.* oido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. oigo, oyes, oye; oimos, oís, oyen.
Perfect. oí, oiste, oyó; oimos, oísteis, oyeron.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. oye, oiga;——oid, oigan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. oiga, oigas, oiga; oigamos, oigais, oigan.
1st Imp. oyera, -as, -a; oyéramos, -ais, -eran.
2nd Imp. oyese, -es, -e; oyésemos, -eis, -esen.
Future. oyere, -es, -e; oyéremos, -éreis, -eren.

12. PODER, *to be able.* *G.* pudiendo, *P.* podido.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. puedo, puedes, puede; podemos, podeis, pueden.
Perfect. pude, pudiste, pudo; pudimos, -ísteis, -ieron.
Fut. podré, podras, podrá; podremos, podreis, podrán.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. puede, pueda;——poded, puedan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. pueda, -as, -a; podamos, podais, puedan.
1*st Imp.* pudiera, -as, -a; pudiéramos, -iérais, -ieran.
2*nd Imp.* pudiese, -es, -e; pudiésemos, -iéseis, -iesen.
Condit. podria, -ias, -ia; podriamos, -iais, -ian.
Future. pudiere, -es, -e; pudiéremos, -iéreis, -iéren.

13. PONER, *to put.* *G.* poniendo, *P.* puesto.

INDICATIVE.

Present. pongo, pones, pone; ponemos, -eis, -en.
Perfect. puse, -iste, -o; pusimos, -ísteis, -ieron.
Future. pondré, -ás, -á; pondrémos, -eis, -án.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. pon, ponga;——poned, pongan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. ponga, pongas, ponga; pongamos, -ais, -an.
1*st Imp.* pusiera, -ieras, -iera; -iéramos, -iérais, -ieran.
2*nd Imp.* pusiese, -ieses, -iese; -iésemos, -iéseis, -iesen.
Condit. pondria, -ias, -ia; pondríamos, -iais, -ian.
Future. pusiere, -eres, -ere; pusiéremos, -éreis, -eren.

14. QUERER, *to be willing.* *G.* queriendo, *P.* querido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. quiero, -es, -e; queremos, quereis, quieren.
Perfect. quise, quisiste, quiso; quisimos, -ísteis, quieron.
Future. querré, querrás, querrá; querrémos, -éis, -án.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. quiere, quiera;——quered, quieran.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. quiera, -as, -a; querramos, querrais, quieran.
1*st Imp.* quisiera, -as, -a; quisiéramos, -iérais, -iéran.
2*nd Imp.* quisiese, -es, -e; quisiésemos, -iéseis, -iésen.
Condit. querria, -ias, -ia; querríamos, -iais, -ian.
Future. quisiere, -es, -e; quiséremos, -éreis, -éren.

15. SABER, *to know.* *G.* sabiendo, *P.* sabido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. sé, sabes, sabe; sabemos, sabeis, saben.
Perfect. supe, supiste, supo; supimos, -ísteis, -iéron.
Future. sabré, sabrás, sabrá; sabrémos, sabréis, sabrán.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. sabe, sepa;——sabed, sepan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. sepa, sepas, sepa; sepamos, sepais, sepan.
1st Imp. supiera, -ieras, -iera; -iéramos, -iérais, -iéran.
2nd Imp. supiese, -ieses, -iese; -iésemos, -iéseis, -iésen.
Condit. sabria, -ias, -ia; sabríamos, -íais, -ian.
Future. supiere, -ieres, -iere; -iéremos, -iéreis, -ieren.

16. SALIR, *to go out.* *G.* saliendo, *P.* salido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. salgo, sales, sale; salimos, salís, salen.
Fut. saldré, saldrás, saldrá; saldremos, saldreis, saldrán.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. sal, salga;——salid, salgan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. salga, salgas, salga; salgamos, -ais, -an.
Condit. saldria, -ias, -ia; saldríamos, -íais, -ian.

17. TRAER, *to bring.* *G.* trayendo, *P.* traido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. traigo, traes, trae; traemos, traeis, traen.
Perf. traje, trajiste, trajo; trajimos, trajísteis, trajeron.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. trae, traiga;——traed, traigan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. traiga, traigas, traiga; traigamos, -ais, -an.
1*st Imperf.* trajera, -eras, -era; -éramos, -érais, -eran.
2*nd Imperf.* trajese, -eses, -ese; -ésemos, -éseis, -esen.
Future. trajere, -eres, -ere; -éremos, -éreis, -eren.

VALER, *to be worth.* Like SALIR.

18. VENIR, *to come.* *G.* viniendo. *P.* venido.

INDICATIVE.

Present. vengo, vienes, viene; venimos, venís, vienen.
Perf. vine, viniste, vino; vinimos, vinísteis, viniéron.
Future. vendré, vendrás, vendrá; vendrémos, -eis, -án.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. ven, venga;——venid, vengan.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. venga, -as, -a; vengamos, -ais, -an.
1*st Imp.* viniera, -ieras, iera; -iéramos, -ierais, -ieran.
2*nd Imp.* viniese, -ieses, -iese; -iésemos, -ieseis, -iesen.
Condit. vendria, -ias, -ia; vendríamos, -íais, -ian.
Future. viniere, -ieres, -iere; viniéremos, -iereis, -ieren.

19. VER, *to see.* *G.* viendo. *P.* visto.

INDICATIVE.

Present. veo, ves, ve; vemos, veis, ven.
Imperf. veia, veias, veia; veiamos, veiais, veian.

IMPERATIVE.

Present. ve, vea;——ved, vean.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. vea, veas, vea; veamos, veais, vean.

And the compounds, as *prever*, *rever*, &c.

These are all the Spanish verbs of an individual irregularity, which it is advisable that the student should

learn separately, as they are of frequent occurrence in the language. Most of them have their compounds, which, of course, follow the same irregularities; as, *deshacer* to undo, *recaer* to relapse, *componer* to compose, *detener* to detain, *contraer* to contract, *convenir* to agree, &c.

Observations upon some Irregular Verbs.

I. Caber.—No English verb can express by itself the meaning of *caber*, either in its literal or metaphorical acceptations: it expresses the capability or incapability of a person or thing to be contained within a place. Ex.—

No cabe la bala en el cañon.	*The ball cannot go through the barrel.*
No caber de gozo.	*To be overjoyed.*
No cabian de pies en el cuarto.	*They could not stand in the room*, or *they were closely penned up.*
Cien ejemplares de la obra caben muy bien en esta caja.	*A hundred copies of the work may be easily packed in this box.*
No caber en sí.	*To be full of one's-self.*
No caber en el mundo.	*To be elated with pride.*
No le cabia el corazon en el pecho.	*He was grieved at heart*, or, *he panted from fear.*

This verb is also employed for *to happen*, or *to fall in lot* or *to one's share*. Ex.—

Quiso el Señor que fueses Cristiano, y que te cupiese la suerte en el gremio de la iglesia.	*It pleased the Lord that you should be a Christian, and a member of the church.*
No piensen los sacerdotes que ellos solos tienen cabida con Dios.	*Let not the priests think that they alone are acceptable to God.*—(Jarvis.)
Yo cupe á un renegado Veneciano.—*D. Quixote*, I. 40.	*I fell by lot to a Venetian renegade.*
Ya tenemos aqui, dijo Roque, novecientos escu-	*So then, said Roque, we have here nine hundred*

dos y sesenta reales: mis soldados deben ser hasta sesenta; mirese á como le cabe á cada uno.—II. 60.

crowns and sixty reals: my soldiers are sixty; see how much it comes to a-piece.

II. DAR, *to give.*—This verb has the astonishing number of three hundred and seventy different acceptations in the dictionary of the Spanish Academy. I shall mention here only one, of peculiar grace and originality. It consists in using the imperative and the infinitive of the verbs *dar* and *tomar* as substantives, both in the singular and plural, to express a contention between two persons. Ex.—

Socrates oia siempre con tranquilidad el continuo *dale* que *dale* de Xantipe su muger.

Socrates always listened with tranquillity to the incessant scolding of his wife Xantippe.

La muger virtuosa no ha de tener trato ni amistad, ni *dar* y *tomar* con mugeres mundanas.

A virtuous woman ought not to be intimate, nor to have any altercations with women of bad character.

No vamos á bodas, sino á rodear por el mundo, y á tener *dares* y *tomares* con gigantes.—*D. Quixote*, I. 5.

We are not going to a wedding, but to roam about the world, and to have now and then a bout to give and take with giants.

III. DECIR, *to say.*—With this verb the above expressions are rendered still more graceful. DAR and TOMAR generally express *to come to blows*; but DIME and DIRETE give a more complete idea of garrulous strife. The proper meaning is this: if you injure me by your words, I will say all that can offend you. Ex.—

Un hombre respectable debe escusar todo *dime* y *direte.*

A respectable man ought to avoid offensive words.

No sino andarse á cada triquete conmigo á *dime* y *direte.*—*D. Quixote*, II. 33.

It would be fine indeed if I must be called in question at every turn.

El Maese Pedro no quiso entrar en mas *dimes* ni *diretes* con Don Quixote.—II. 26.

Master Peter would have no more to do with him. (Smollett.) *Mr. Peter had no mind to enter into any more* tell me's *and* I will tell you's *with Don Quixote.* —(Jarvis.)

Section V.

Impersonal Verbs.

Properly speaking, there is no impersonal verb in any language, because no affirmation can be made, or action supposed, without a subject: for instance, *llueve* it rains; in which action we may suppose an agent, as God, the heavens, or a cloud, &c. This denomination, however, is given to some verbs used exclusively in the third person, without any nominative being expressed. Such verbs may be divided into two classes,—*Original* and *Accidental.*

Original Impersonal Verbs.

This class comprehends those verbs which denote an action of nature, the agent of which is unknown to us; and we therefore use them in the third person absolutely, without any reference to a masculine or feminine gender. In Spanish, the neuter pronoun *ello*, 'it,' may be prefixed, but it is generally omitted; its use would in many instances form an uncouth expression. The English pronoun *it* expresses this sort of impersonality better than any other language. These impersonal verbs are the following:—

Amanecer, *to grow light.*
Anochecer, *to grow dark.*
Escarchar, *to congeal the dew.*
Helar, *to freeze.*
Granizar, *to hail.*
Llover, *to rain.*
Llovisnar, *to drizzle.*
Nevar, *to snow.*
Relampaguear, *to lighten.*
Tronar, *to thunder.*

These verbs are conjugated in the third person singular of each tense, without a pronoun; and those which

are irregular in some tenses, retain their irregularity, as may be seen in the following verb, *nevar*:

INDICATIVE.

Present.	nieva,	*it snows.*
Imperf.	nevaba,	*it was snowing.*
Perfect.	nevó,	*it snowed.*
Future.	nevará,	*it will snow.*

IMPERATIVE.

que nieve ó no nieve, *let it snow or not.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	aunque nieve,	*though it may snow.*
1st Imp.	— nevara,	— *it should snow.*
2nd Imp.	— nevase,	— *it might snow.*
Condit.	— nevaria,	— *it would snow.*
Future.	si nevare,	*if it should snow.*

And their compound tenses with the auxiliary *haber*.

N.B. *Amanecer* and *anochecer* are sometimes used in the three persons, both in the singular and the plural of each tense; but in such cases the pronouns are not the subjects of the verbs, which merely express the situation of the persons at the time when it grew light or dark. Ex.—*Amanecí rico y anochecí pobre*, early in the morning I was rich, and when the night came I was a poor man; or, I lost all my fortune in a single day. *Amaneceremos cerca del puerto*; at the first dawn of day we shall be near the port. *Mi amigo anocheció y no amaneció*; my friend went to bed in health, and he was dead before the morning.

Accidental Impersonal Verbs.

This class comprehends those active and neuter verbs which are occasionally used as impersonals, such as,—

SER, *as* es menester, *it is necessary.*
HACER, *as* hace frio, *it is cold.*
IMPORTAR, *as* importa estudiar, } *it is important to study.*
CONVENIR, *as* conviene leer, *it is convenient to read.*

ACAECER,	*as* acaece, *it happens.*
ACONTECER,	*as* acontece, *it comes to pass.*
SUCEDER,	*as* sucede, *it happens.*
PARECER,	*as* parece, *it appears.*
OCURRIR,	*as* ocurre, *it occurs.*

There are likewise several active verbs made impersonals by the concurrence of a pronoun. First, with the pronoun *se,* either prefixed or affixed to the third person of the singular in each tense, both simple and compound; as, *se dice*, or *dicese*, it is said; *se cree*, or *creese*, it is believed, &c. Secondly, with any of the reflective pronouns, *me, te, le, nos, os, les*; as, *me gusta, te gusta, le gusta, nos gusta, os gusta, les gusta*; it pleases me, it pleases thee, &c.

But the most usual impersonal verbs in Spanish are *haber* and *hacer*, both expressed in English by the auxiliary verb *to be*; with this difference, that the English language, in imitation of the Latin and the Italian, has given a plural to these verbs,—an advantage over the Spanish, which has only the singular, as appears in the conjugation of

HABER.

INDICATIVE.

Present.	hay,	*there is,* or *there are.*
Imperf.	habia,	*there was*, or *there were.*
Perfect.	hubo,	*there was*, or *there were.*
Future.	habrá,	*there will be.*

IMPERATIVE.

haya luz, *let there be light.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	aunque haya,	*though there may be.*
1*st Imp.*	— hubiera,	— *there should be.*
2*nd Imp.*	— hubiese,	— *there might be.*
Condit.	— habria,	— *there would be.*
Future.	si hubiere,	*if there should be.*

And their compound tenses, as,

ha habido, &c. *there has* or *have been*, &c.

HACER.

Indicative.

Present.	hace,	*it is.*
Imperf.	hacia,	*it was.*
Perfect.	hizo,	*it was.*
Future.	hará,	*it will be.*

Imperative.

haga, *let it be.*

Subjunctive.

Present.	aunque haga,		*though it may be.*
1*st Imperf.*	— hiciera,	—	*it should be.*
2*nd Imperf.*	— hiciese,	—	*it might be.*
Conditional.	— haria,	—	*it could be.*
Future.	si hiciere,		*if it should be.*

And their compound tenses, as,

ha hecho, &c. *it has been*, &c.

N.B. This verb is used in Spanish to express a determinate number of years, months, days, hours, &c., but always in the singular. Ex.—

Hace ocho años que.	*It is eight years since.*
Hacia cuatro meses.	*It was four months.*
Hará dos semanas.	*It will be two weeks.* &c.

The state of the weather is also expressed by means of this impersonal verb, as,

Hace frio, calor, &c. *It is cold, hot, &c.*

Section IV.

Defective Verbs.

Those verbs which have only certain tenses, and are seldom used, are called Defectives. Of these there are but three in Spanish now in use, *soler*, *placer*, and *yacer*.

SOLER, *to be wont.*

This verb has only two tenses in all their persons.

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	suelo, sueles, suele; solemos, soleis, suelen.
Imperf.	solia, solias, solia; solíamos, solíais, solian.

PLACER, *to render acceptable.*

This verb is used only in the third person of each tense, except in the future of the indicative and the conditional.

INDICATIVE.

Present.	place,	*it pleases.*
Imperf.	placia,	*it pleased.*
Perfect.	plugo,	*it did please.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	plegue,	*it may please.*
1*st Imperf.*	pluguiera,	*it would please.*
2*nd Imperf.*	pluguiese,	*it might please.*
Future.	si pluguiere,	*if it should please.*

N.B. The student will observe, 1st, That the above tenses of the indicative always require the pronoun *me*, *te*, or *le*, to be either prefixed or affixed to the verb; as, *me place* or *plácemc*; *te placia* or *placiate*; *le plugo* or *plúgole*: 2ndly, That the tenses of the subjunctive have the names of God or heaven always after the verb; as, *plegue á Dios*, would to God! *pluguiese al cielo*, would to heaven! But if there should be any conjunction before the verb, it ceases to be an exclamation, and then takes the pronoun; as, *si me pluguiere*, should it please me, &c.

The Spanish Academy observes, that this verb is used in the third person of the singular only; but its use in the plural, and in all tenses, is so commonly found in the best writers, and is so expressive, that it is somewhat strange that the Academy should have noted it as obsolete.

Sancho á quien jamas pluguieron ni solazaron semejantes fechorias, se acogió á las tinajas.—*Quixote*, II. 21.

Sancho, who took no pleasure in such kind of frays, retired to the jars.

Recibiré con humilde sumision todas las amonestaciones que le placerá enviarme.—*Rivadeneira.*

I will receive with great humility whatsoever admonitions you shall be pleased to send to me.

YACER, *to lie dead.*

The use of this verb is now restricted to the third person of the present indicative, and is applied only to sepulchral inscriptions, where it is generally in the singular, but in the plural when it relates to the remains of more than one person.

Singular. aqui yace, *here lies.*
Plural. aqui yacen, *here lie.*

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF THE VERBS.

There is in the Spanish language an affinity so peculiar between the moods and tenses of the verbs that it requires to be attentively considered. The first difficulty to the English scholar is the discrimination between the two preterites of the indicative, of which the English language is destitute; but in this respect the Spanish preterites, imperfect and perfect, being similar to those of the Latin and the Continental languages, the knowledge of any of the latter may facilitate that of the former. Another peculiarity in Spanish phraseology which requires attention, attaches to those sentences where two or more verbs are dependent upon each other, the tense of the principal verb assigning to the subordinate one the precise tense which belongs to it. But

the greatest difficulty in Spanish is to obtain a correct knowledge of the subjunctive mood, on account of the number of its tenses, and the nice distinctions in their application: it is this, indeed, which occasions the greatest embarrassment to foreigners in this part of the grammar; but it is hoped that these difficulties will be removed in a great measure, by the arrangement of tenses here given, and by the following observations.

Section I.

Of the right Use of the Tenses.

Indicative Mood.

Present.—This tense speaks of a thing present, or now doing; as, *vm. me pregunta, y yo le respondo*; you ask me, and I answer you. The use of this tense, both simple and compound, is, generally speaking, the same as in English. There are, however, a few cases in which the present is used instead of the future, to give more vivacity to the expression; as, *vuelvo en un rato*, I shall be back presently. At other times it is used for the preterperfect, to strike the imagination more forcibly; but even in such cases the same use of the present is made in English.

Present Compound.—When an action is altogether past, the preterperfect tense must be used in Spanish, as in English; but there are some actions which do not imply a precise time, or which have occurred in a period of time not yet complete, and such require the *present compound*. Ex.—

He escrito á vm. que el Señor Gobernador ha recibido el memorial que vm. le ha dirijido: hoy me ha hablado sobre el asunto, y siento mucho decir que nada se ha determinado hasta ahora.	*I have written word to you that the Governor has received the petition you have addressed to him: to-day he has spoken to me on the subject, and I am very sorry to say that nothing has yet been resolved upon.*

In this example, neither the time when the letter was written, nor that when the petition was received, is specified; and the day when the conversation took place is not concluded, nor the time for the final determination on the subject: the verbs, therefore, are in the *present compound.* The syntax on the use of this tense is the same both in English and Spanish; but to mistake the preterperfect for the present compound, as is frequently done in English, would in Spanish be a solecism.

Preterimperfect.—This tense speaks of a thing that was doing at some time past, but not then concluded. This is the tense most commonly mistaken by English scholars: its proper use, however, may be learned by attending to the following general rules.

I. Whenever the active participle of the principal verb, with the perfect of the auxiliary verb *to be,* may be employed in English to express indefinitely the time past, the Spanish imperfect must be employed; as, I was reading, *leia*; he was writing, *el escribia*; you were walking, *vm. paseaba*; they were riding, *andaban á caballo,* &c.

II. Whenever the preterite in English may be rendered by the word *used,* before the principal verb in the infinitive, or the adverb *always* may be annexed to the verb, the Spanish imperfect must be employed. Ex.—

Cuando yo *estaba* en Gibraltar, *subia* á la roca una ó dos veces en la semana, y *admiraba* la perspectiva que las costas de España y Africa *presentaban* á mi vista.	*When I was at Gibraltar, I ascended the rock once or twice a week, and admired the prospect which the coasts of Spain and Africa presented to my view.*

In this sentence the preterite in each phrase must be rendered by the Spanish imperfect, because the English may be altered according to the above rules:—When I *was residing* at Gibraltar I *used to* ascend the rock once or twice a week, and *every time I admired* the pro-

spect which the coasts of Spain and Africa *always* presented to my view.

Yo fui á Brighton en Septiembre pasado; *me detuve* alli tres meses, y *volví* cerca de Navidad.	*I went to Brighton in September last; I stopped there three months, and returned about Christmas.*

None of the preterites in this sentence can be rendered by the Spanish imperfect, because those English verbs cannot be altered to mean a usual or repeated action; and therefore they require to be placed in the perfect, which expresses an action past and completed.

This tense is also mistaken by English scholars when the verb is preceded by the conjunction *if*. A little attention to the following rule will point out the proper tense in Spanish.

When the conjunction *if* precedes the English preterite, the meaning must refer either to a time *past*, or to a time *future*; if *past*, the Spanish imperfect of the indicative ought to be used; and if *future*, one of the two imperfects of the subjunctive must be employed. Ex.—

1. Si yo tenia dinero, lo gastaba.	*If I (then) had money, I spent it.*
2. Si tenia criados, podia mantenerlos.	*If I (then) had servants, I was able to keep them.*
3. Si tuviera un caballo, montaria cada dia.	*If I had a horse, I would ride every day.*
4. Si el tuviera (*or* tuviese) millares, todo lo malgastaria.	*If he had thousands, he would squander all.*

In the first and second examples the meaning of the verb refers to a time past, and the Spanish imperfect is accordingly used; but in the third and fourth examples the meaning of the verb refers to a time future, or a time wished for, and one of the two imperfects of the subjunctive is accordingly employed.

Preterperfect.—This tense expresses an action already done and past, without reference to any other. Ex.—

Vine ayer y no *encontré* á vm. en casa, asi no *pude* informar á vm. que el barco *llegó* con felicidad á Cadiz el dia dos del corriente.	*I came yesterday and did not find you at home, so I could not inform you that the ship arrived safely at Cadiz on the second instant.*

The action indicated by each verb in these phrases is complete, and consequently the preterperfect is employed.

As the discrimination of these two preterite tenses in Spanish is of great importance, the student will profit by comparing and practising himself in the following themes.

Comparative Examples.

Atentisimo *estuvo* Sancho á la relacion de la vida y entretenimientos del hidalgo, y pareciendole buena y santa, y que quien la *hacia debia* de hacer milagros, se *arrojó* del Rucio, y con gran priesa le *fué* á asir del estribo derecho, y con devoto corazon y casi lagrimas le *besó* los pies una y muchas veces. Visto lo cual por el hidalgo, le *preguntó*, Qué haceis, hermano? Qué besos son estos? Dejenme besar, respondió Sancho, porque me parece vuesa merced el primer santo á la gineta que *he visto* en todos los dias de mi vida.—*D. Quixote*, II. 16.	*Sancho was very attentive to the relation of the gentleman's life and amusements, all which appeared to him to be good and holy; and thinking that one of such a character must needs work miracles, he flung himself off his Dapple, and running hastily, laid hold of his stirrup, and with a devout heart and almost weeping eyes he kissed his feet more than once; which the gentleman perceiving, said, What mean you, brother? What kisses are these?—Pray let me kiss on, answered Sancho, for your Worship is the first saint on horseback I ever saw in all the days of my life.*

Exercises.

1. I was once present at the lectures of a profound

philosopher, who, having occasion to explain the terms *opacum* and *pellucidum*, told us, after some hesitation, that *opacum* was, as one might say, opake, and that *pellucidum* signified pellucid: such was the dexterity with which this learned reader facilitated to his auditors the intricacies of science.

Once, *una vez*; to explain, *esplicar*; term, *voz*; to tell, *decir*; as one might say, *como si se dijese*; dexterity, *maña*; learned, *docto*; auditor, *oyente*; intricacy, *dificultad*.

2. La Roche's religion was that of sentiment, not theory, and his guest was adverse to disputation; their discourse, therefore, did not lead to questions concerning the belief of either. Of all men I ever knew, his ordinary conversation was the least tinctured with pedantry, or liable to dissertation.

Guest, *huesped*; disputation, *disputa*; therefore, *por tanto*; to lead, *conducir*; concerning, *respecto á*; belief, *creencia*; either, *uno ú otro*; to know, *conocer*; pedantry, *pedanteria*; liable, *espuesto*.

3. When he was interrupted by company, or fatigued with business, he so strongly imagined to himself the happiness of leisure and retreat, that he determined to enjoy them for the future without interruption.

To interrupt, *interrumpir*; business, *negocio*; to imagine oneself, *imaginarse*; happiness, *felicidad*; leisure, *sosiego*; retreat, *retiro*; to enjoy, *gozar*.

4. Rasselas returned home full of reflections, doubtful how to direct his future steps. Of the way to happiness he found the learned and simple equally ignorant; but as he was yet young, he flattered himself that he had time remaining for more experiments. He communicated to Imlac his observations and his doubts, but was answered by him with new doubts, and remarks that gave him no comfort. He therefore discoursed more frequently and freely with his sister, who had yet the same hope with himself, and always assisted him to give some reason why, though he had been hitherto frustrated, he might succeed at last.

To return home, *volver á casa*; step, *paso*; way, *camino*;

to find, *hallar*; young, *joven*; to flatter oneself, *lisonjearse*; to answer, *responder*; remark, *reparo*; comfort, *consuelo*; to discourse, *discurrir*; sister, *hermana*; yet, *todavia*; hope, *esperanza*; hitherto, *hasta aqui.*

Imperfect Compound.—This tense is used to indicate that an action had been done, or an event had occurred, when a new circumstance took place. Ex.—

Ya *habia tomado* un asiento en la diligencia para Falmouth, cuando recibí una carta informandome que el paquebote se *habia hecho* á la vela; asi me detuve en Londres, y perdí solamente la mitad del dinero que *habia pagado* al tiempo de registrar mi lugar.

I had already taken a seat in the mail for Falmouth, when I received a letter with the information that the packet had set sail; thus I remained in London, and I lost only half of the money I had paid down at the time of booking my place.

In this sentence, the circumstances of booking my place, of the packet sailing, and of paying the money, were past when I received the news, by a letter written after the packet was gone; and the money had been paid before they returned me half of the fare. The use of this tense being similar in both languages, except in a few idiomatical expressions, the preceding example is sufficient to show its application.

Perfect Compound.—By means of this tense an action already past is expressed in Spanish in a most elegant manner. Ex.—

Asi que *hube concluido* todas mis diligencias, me volví á casa.

As soon as I had done all my business, I returned home.

Luego que *hubiste gastado* cuanto poseias, principiaste á maldecir tu mala fortuna.

After you had spent all that you had, you began to curse your bad luck.

No bien *hubo acabado* su

Scarcely had he finished

discurso, cuando todos le aplaudieron con el mayor regocijo.

his speech, when he was heartily applauded by all.

Oido que hubimos el cañoneo marchamos al socorro de la guarnicion.

As soon as we heard the cannonade we marched to the assistance of the garrison.

The student will easily perceive that this tense in Spanish expresses the rapidity of one action after another has taken place, and that the adverbs *despues que, asi que, luego que, no bien,* must precede the auxiliary verb *hube,* &c. In the last example the phrase begins with the participle, which gives still more energy to the expression.

Future.—The use of this tense is generally the same in both languages. It is, however, used in Spanish for the present of the indicative, when it implies some doubt or apprehension on the part of the speaker. Ex.—

Se dice que el Rey ha llegado; quizas *vendrá* á prorogar el Parlamento.

It is said that the King is arrived; perhaps he comes to prorogue the Parliament.

Veo venir á mi amigo con grande priesa, ¿le *habrá* sucedido alguna desgracia?

I see my friend coming in great haste; I apprehend some misfortune has occurred to him.

Habrá persona mas infeliz que un caballero pobre?

Is there a person more wretched than a gentleman without money?

In these sentences nothing certain is specified, otherwise the verbs should be construed in the present tense.

Future Compound.—This tense denotes that an event may have happened before some circumstance takes place. Ex.—

El Gobierno ha despachado un correo llamando al ministro; pero se cree que este *habrá par-*

The Government has sent a courier, recalling the minister; but it is supposed that he will have departed

tido antes que le llegue la orden.

El Almirante es un hombre de prudencia y de valor, por lo que no hay duda que *habrá hecho* su deber, si por algun medio ha llegado á su noticia la declaracion de la guerra.

Se supone que la fragata *habrá llegado* á este tiempo.

before the order shall reach him.

The Admiral is a man of prudence and courage, and therefore there is no doubt that he has done his duty, if by some means or other he has learned the declaration of war.

It is presumed that the frigate is arrived by this time.

N.B. There is in Spanish another future tense, of frequent use, which belongs to the infinitive, which see.

Imperative Mood.

The Spanish Academy very properly does not admit a first person plural in the imperative, for the same reason that there is not a first person in the singular. The first person plural does not imply command; it is only an exhortation or word of encouragement, as in the following expressions; *dejemonos de estas disputas*, let us leave contentions; *marchemos contra el enemigo, y si fuere necesario muramos por la patria*, let us march against the enemy, and if necessary let us die for our country. There is no command in these expressions, as every individual of the party may equally say the same, and at the same time.

In Spanish the imperative cannot be used negatively; such phrases are prohibitions, and these are expressed in Spanish by the present of the subjunctive, preceded by the negative adverb *no*, as in Italian by means of the infinitive.

After these observations it may be said that the use of the imperative is nearly the same in both languages. The only differences,—not in the use, but in the words, —are, 1st, That the Spanish does not admit the verb *let*, as the English does, to denote the third person, because the terminations of the verb are sufficient of them-

selves to express each person: 2ndly, That the particle *que* may, and very often does, precede the verb, particularly in a distributive sense. Ex.—*Que venga ó que no venga,* let him come or not; *que llueva, ó que no llueva,* whether it rains, or whether it does not rain.

Subjunctive Mood.

This mood is undoubtedly the most difficult part of the Spanish grammar. It comprehends, besides those tenses found in other modern languages, two simple, and two compound tenses, the application of which having no correspondents to which they might be referred, requires many rules and nice distinctions.

Every tense in the subjunctive is preceded by a conjunction, either expressed or understood, and is governed by another verb, generally in the indicative mood; and on the signification of this governing verb the application of the other must depend: hence I shall call that which precedes the conjunction the *principal verb,* and the *subordinate verb* that which follows the conjunction, which is the knot of the two parts of the sentence; and it matters not whether the principal or whether the subordinate verb be in the first or in the second part, since the conjunction always marks the place of the latter. Previously to entering on the use of each individual tense, the student will attend to the following preliminary observations.

I. Each tense of the subjunctive must correspond with the tense of the principal verb in the indicative,—the present with the present, the preterimperfect generally with the conditional, the perfect with either of the two imperfects, and the future with the future.

II. All verbs expressing doubt, desire, will, fear, surprise, command, permission, or any other operation of the mind, followed by the conjunction *que,* require the subjunctive after them.

Having given these general rules, I shall explain each tense specifically.

Present.—1. When the principal verb is an impersonal, the subordinate verb should be put in the present of the subjunctive. Ex.—

Es lastima que no convengas en una propuesta tan ventajosa.	*It is a pity that you would not accept so advantageous a proposal.*
Es menester que mantengas tu derecho.	*It is necessary that you should defend your just claim.*
Es prudente que nos sometamos á la decision de un jurado.	*It is prudent that we should submit to the verdict of a jury.*
Mas vale que nos tengan envidia que lastima.	*It is better that others should envy than pity us.*
Tengo la satisfaccion de ser el primero que dé á vm. una noticia tan agradable.	*I have the pleasure to be the first to give you news so agreeable.*

2. When the first part of the sentence is negative, the verb of the second part requires the present of the subjunctive. Ex.—

No niego que esa falta sea muy comun en personas jovenes.	*I do not deny such a fault to be very common in young people.*
No me fiaré de ninguno á quien no conozca.	*I shall not trust persons unknown to me.*
No me opongo á que vm. se divierta jugando al villar ú otro juego semejante.	*I do not disapprove of your playing at billiards or such like games.*
Es muy dificil que vm. aprenda sin hacer atencion.	*It is very difficult for you to learn without giving attention.*

It has been said, in treating of the imperative, that the expressions of prohibition, which in English are in the imperative, ought to be put in Spanish in the present of the subjunctive. Ex.—

No te diviertas con cosas tan frívolas, ni te enojes con tus compañeros.	*Do not pass your time in such frivolous things, nor be cross with your schoolfellows.*

No busquemos ni huyamos de encontrarnos con nuestros enemigos.	*Let us not provoke, nor fear to meet our enemies.*
No entres sin necesidad en disputas sobre la religion.	*Do not enter unnecessarily into disputes about religion.*
Me averguenzo de mi flaqueza; no la refieras á otro.	*I am ashamed of my weakness; do not tell any one of it.*
Vete, y no vuelvas mas á mi presencia.	*Go away, and let me not see you again.*

If the English verbal signs, *may*, *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, could be brought to determine the five tenses of the Spanish subjunctive, as their meaning seems to do, the whole syntax of this mood might be comprised in two lines; but as those signs are chiefly employed in English to express the power a person possesses of acting by himself, or by the permission of another, the free will of a person to do a thing, or the obligation imposed on him by command, without any reference to the mood of the verb, no determinate tense can be given to those signs, which are in fact often real verbs, and not signs, when they must be rendered in Spanish by the active verbs *deber*, *poder*, or *querer*. The present of the subjunctive, however, may be easily ascertained by the following rule.

Whenever the sign *may* is followed by the conjunction *that*, the sentence must be rendered in Spanish by the present of the subjunctive. Ex.—

Quiera el cielo que sea asi!	*Heaven grant that it may be so!*
Deseo con todo mi corazon que ella viva feliz.	*I wish with all my heart that she may be happy.*
Le he mandado dinero para que pague sus deudas, y que viva sin sobresalto.	*I have sent him money that he may pay his debts, and live without apprehension.*
Procure vm. su pasaporte en la secretaria de	*Get your passport from the secretary's office, and*

estado, y algunas cartas del secretario del esterior, para que vm. pueda pasar de un pais á otro sin embarazo.

some letters from the foreign minister, that you may pass from country to country without molestation.

First Imperfect, in ra.—The confusion produced in other Spanish grammars, by giving three different terminations to this tense, being here in a great measure removed, by the classification of a first and a second imperfect, and a conditional tense, the discrimination of the three will be better understood. The two imperfects are, in general, equivalent to each other; but as there are some cases in which they are not so, by attending to the following rules their distinction will appear sufficiently clear.

I. If the sentence begins without any condition, the first imperfect in *ra* must be used in the first part, and never the second in *se*. Ex.—

Yo procurara las riquezas si pudieran (*or* pudiesen) hacerme feliz.

I would seek after riches if they could render me happy.

Fortuna fuera que los gobiernos conocieran (*or* conociesen) el verdadero interes de las naciones.

It would be a happy thing if all governments would know the real interest of nations.

No estuviera vm. pobre si no hubiera (*or* hubiese) sido tan liberal.

You would not be poor (now) if you had not been so liberal.

Yo quisiera que hubiese estudiado las leyes, y la teologia, reina de todas las ciencias.

I wished him to have studied the laws, and theology, the queen of all the sciences.

II. After interrogative pronouns, this imperfect in *ra* is to be preferred to the other imperfect in *se*. Ex.—

Quien lo creyera!

Who would have believed it!

Quien lo hubiera imaginado!

Who would have imagined it!

Sin la religion, qué hu-

Without religion, what

biera en el mundo sino vicios?

would there be in the world but vice?

Cual fuera su estado si no hubiera tenido protectores?

What would be his condition were it not for his friends?

Qué de penas y tormentos me hubiera ahorrado!

How much trouble and torment he would have spared me!

The Spanish classics have made an elegant use of this imperfect, instead of its compound, as may be seen in the following examples:

Fuera breve y favorable su resolucion, si no le embarazaran otras circunstancias.—*Solis.*

His resolution would have been short and favourable, had he not been hindered by other circumstances.

Arrojaranse á sus pies si no los detuviera.

They would have thrown themselves at his feet, if he had not prevented them.

La monarquia que levantaron los Africanos en España se conservara, si los Califas no mandaran alli principes de dos facciones contrarias.

The monarchy founded in Spain by the Africans would have been preserved, if the Caliphs had not sent there princes of two contrary factions.

Second Imperfect, in se.—This tense can never be employed unless it is preceded by a conjunction, and it is by this circumstance only that it can be distinguished from the first imperfect in *ra*, which does not always require the conjunction. Euphony, however, renders this termination preferable to the other, in the second part of the sentence, and this is the ground for the following rule.

When the principal verb is in the imperfect *ra*, the subordinate verb ought to be in the imperfect *se*. Ex.—

Yo quisiera que mi amigo fuese mas firme en sus resoluciones.

I would my friend were more firm in his resolutions.

El está estudiando las

He is learning the dead

lenguas muertas, pero mejor fuera que aprendiese las vivas.	*languages, but it were better that he should acquire the modern.*
Yo diera algo por que veniese.	*I would give anything that he would come.*

It should be observed that the preceding rule is not so strict, as to make the repetition of the same imperfect in *ra* ungrammatical; it being very common to meet with many sentences among the best writers, in which both the principal and the subordinate verb have the same termination.

With these exceptions, the student will consider as a general rule,—That after a conjunction, expressed or understood, either of the two imperfects may be used, whether the conjunction be in the first or in the second part of the sentence.

Conditional.—All tenses in the subjunctive mood require a conjunction before them, except the conditional, which requires none; and that is the characteristic by which the student will know when he ought to make use of this tense. This rule is so precise, that it will be sufficient to point out in every instance the application of the conditional tense. Ex.—

Yo daria cualquiera cosa por saber amenudo de mis amigos.	*I would give anything to hear often of my friends.*
Bueno seria que los hombres, en sus innovaciones, siguieran el ejemplo del tiempo mismo.	*It were good that men, in their innovations, should follow the example of time itself.*

The conditional, in the beginning of a sentence, cannot be mistaken; but when it is, as generally is the case, in the second part, the meaning of the first, or principal verb, must be attended to, according to the following rules.

I. When the principal verb signifies assurance, promise, or supposition, the subordinate verb must be in the conditional tense. Ex.—

Me aseguró que me escribiria cada semana á lo menos.	*He assured me he would write to me at least once a week.*
Yo te prometí que iria á verte á tu casa de campo.	*I promised to make you a visit at your country-house.*
Nosotros suponiamos que la paz duraria por muchos años.	*We thought that peace would have continued for many years.*

N.B. There are some verbs that require the conditional, or either of the imperfects, according to their meaning. *Decir*, 'to say', for instance, may express a mere supposition, and then it requires the subordinate or second verb in the conditional. Ex.—*El director de correos dijo que* partiria *un paquebote, el Lunes proximo, de Falmouth para Oporto.* The meaning here is, that the postmaster-general thought that a packet was to sail on Monday next, *as usual*, from Falmouth to Oporto. But if I hear it said, *El director de correos dijo que* partiera *or* partiese *un paquebote, de Falmouth para Lisboa*, I should understand that the postmaster has sent orders to Falmouth that a packet should sail, either ordinary or extraordinary, on such a day, &c.

II. When the principal verb is *pensar* or *creer*, followed by the conjunction *que*, 'that,' the subordinate or second verb may be put in the conditional, as well as in either of the two imperfects. Ex.—

Pensé que el barco se *haria* (or se *hiciera*, or se *hiciese*,) á la vela hoy.	*I thought the ship would get under sail today.*
Yo creia que mañana *seria* (or *fuera*, or *fuese*,) el último dia de este termino.	*I thought that tomorrow was the last day of this term.*
Creyó que *lloveria* (or *lloviera*, or *lloviese*,) por todo el dia.	*He thought it would rain the whole day.*

N.B. This conditional tense is sometimes found after *si*, 'if;' but in such cases the *si* is not a conjunction, but an adverb, meaning 'whether,' which sufficiently indicates the conditional tense. Ex.—

Le preguntó el ministro *si admitiria* ese empleo, ó *si esperaria* otra oportunidad.	*The minister asked him if (whether) he would accept that situation, or if he would wait for another opportunity.*

N.B. The compound tenses follow the same rules as the simple tenses.

By the preceding rules the student will be enabled to distinguish the application of these three tenses, the two imperfects and the conditional, which are so frequently connected in the same sentence, and occasionally substituted one for the other, according to the framing of the sentence and the taste of the writer; but as the surest means to overcome the difficulties attending this intricate part of the Spanish syntax is practice, I shall here give several themes for exercise, prefixing a summary of the rules (to which a few exceptions only may be found), to be referred to in the course of practice.

1. After a conjunction, either in the first or in the second part of the sentence, either of the two imperfects may be employed.

2. The imperfect in *ra*, without any conjunction, may be used for the conditional in the first part of the sentence.

3. The imperfect in *se* can never be used without a conjunction, and of course cannot be a substitute for the conditional.

4. When the imperfect in *ra* is employed in the first part of the sentence, the other imperfect in *se* should be used in the second part, if there is any conjunction.

5. The conditional is to be used in the absence of a conjunction, either in the first or second part of the sentence.

Comparative Examples.

Si no *estuviera* tan seguro de los principios que sigo, *creeria* que mis reme-	*Were I not so sure of the principles I follow, I should believe my remedies were*

dios eran enteramente contrarios á las enfermedades que trato.—*Gil Blas*, II. cap. 5.

Si *quisieses*, cruel Quiteria, darme en este último y forzoso trance la mano de esposa, aun *pensaria* que mi temeridad *tendria* disculpa, pues en ella alcancé el bien de ser tuyo.—*Don Quixote*, II. cap. 21.

No *padeciera* tantas necesidades, si *hubiese* abierto su pecho á un amigo que le *socorreria* en cuanto le *fuese* posible.

Hubiera caminado toda la noche á pie y solo, si *hubiese* sabido la situation infeliz en que el pobre se hallaba.

Si la gente furiosa, *tuviese* buen natural, su primera ofensa *seria* la última, y *resolverian* no recaer en su falta.

No sé lo que *hubiera* dado porque *hubiese* podido oirla.

entirely contrary to the diseases I am treating.

If, cruel Quiteria, in this my last and fatal agony, you would give me your hand to be my spouse, I should hope my rashness might be pardoned, since it procured me the blessing of being yours.

He would not suffer so many privations had he unbosomed his secret to a friend who would have succoured him as much as it was in his power.

I would have travelled the whole night, walking and alone, had I learned the wretched situation in which the poor man was.

Had angry people really a good disposition, their first offence would be the last, and they would resolve never to relapse.

I do not know what I would have given, provided I could have heard her.

Themes.

I deliberated a long time whether I should immediately go, or remain.

There was no profession in which that man might not have made a very good figure.

Had not exercise been absolutely necessary for our well-being, nature would not have made the body so proper for it.

Were the genealogy of every family faithfully preserved, there would probably be no man valued or despised on account of his birth.

Were we to trace many boasted lines a few degrees above their founders, we should lose them in a mob of tradesmen or a crowd of rustics.

If men appeared no worse than they really are, we should have less work to undertake for their reformation.

Liberty is echoed in all English assemblies, and thousands might be found ready to offer up their lives for the sound, though, perhaps, not one of all the number understands its meaning.

Were we to estimate the learning of the English by the number of books that are every day published among them, perhaps no country in the world could equal them in this particular.

If he had proceeded in his project, and fixed his habitation in the most delightful part of the new world, it may be doubted whether his distance from the vanities of life would have enabled him to keep away the vexations.

If men were all virtuous, returned the artist, I should with great alacrity teach them to fly. But what would be the security of the good, if the bad could at pleasure evade them from the sky?

Were the sun, which enlightens this part of the creation, with all the host of planetary worlds that move about him, utterly extinguished and annihilated, they would not be missed more than a grain of sand upon the sea-shore. The chasm would be imperceptible to an eye that could take in the whole compass of nature.

Meaning of words.—To deliberate, *deliberar*; time, *tiempo*; to go, *ir*; well-being, *bien estar*; body, *cuerpo*; to value, *apreciar*; to despise, *despreciar*; on account of, *por razon de*; birth, *nacimiento*; to trace, *trazar*; boasted, *envanecido*; founder, *fundador*; to lose, *perder*; mob, *turba*; crowd, *conjunto*; to undertake, *emprender*; to echo, *resonar*; sound, *sonido*; learning, *ciencia*; delightful, *delicioso*; to enable, *hacer capaz*; to keep away, *desechar*; alacrity, *alegria*; to teach,

enseñar; to fly, *volar*; sky, *region etérea*; to enlighten, *iluminar*; host, *séquito*; utterly, *enteramente*; to miss, *echar de menos*; sand, *arena*; sea-shore, *orilla de mar*; chasm, *vacío*; eye, *ojo*; to take in, *comprender*; compass, *estension.*

Future.—According to the general rule (page 154.), if the principal verb is in the future of the indicative, the subordinate verb ought to be in the future of the subjunctive. Ex.—

Vm. *leerá* este libro cuando *quisiere.*	*You may read this book when you like.*
Iré á verle lo mas pronto que *pudiere.*	*I shall go to see him as soon as I can.*
Vendame vm. su caballo; le *daré* por él cuanto me *pidiere.*	*Sell me your horse; I will give whatever you ask me for it.*
Escribame vm. por el primer conducto que *hubiere.*	*Write to me the first opportunity.*

But if the first part of the sentence is negative, it will be more agreeable to the ear to put the second verb in the present of the subjunctive, consistently with the observation made at page 157. Ex.—

De aqui en adelante me fiaré solo de aquellos á quienes *conozca.*	*I shall hereafter rely on those only whom I know.*
No me *casaré* con muger alguna que *sepa* Griego ó Latin.	*I will not marry any woman who understands Greek or Latin.*
Este mozo es tan voluntarioso, que no *hará* jamas lo que le *digan*, sino solo lo que *quiera.*	*This lad is so selfish that he will never do what is told him, but only what he likes.*

But the most elegant use of this future tense, peculiar to the Spanish, is to express a future action depending on chance, on choice, or on another future contingent action. It is the future tense of the Latin, *amavero, amaveris, amaverit; amaverimus, amaveritis, amaverint,*—amare, amares, amare, amáremos, amáreis, amaren,—a little different in the inflection, but the same in meaning.

Ex.—"*Uno, amigos,*" *dijo Cortes á sus oficiales,* "*ha de ser el consejo en cuanto se* resolviere, *y comun la gloria en lo que se* conquistare."

The following extract from Cervantes abounds in the proper use of this tense.

Iten: es mi voluntad, que si Antonia Quijana, mi sobrina, *quisiere* casarse, se case con hombre de quien primero se haya hecho informacion que no sabe qué cosa sean libros de caballerias; y en caso que se *averiguare* que lo sabe, y con todo eso mi sobrina *quisiere* casarse con él, y se *casare*, pierda todo lo que le he mandado.—*Don Quixote*, II. cap. 74.

It is also my will, that if Antonio Quixano, my niece, should be inclined to marry, it shall be only with a man who, upon the strictest inquiry, shall be found to know nothing of books of chivalry; and in case it should appear that he is acquainted with such books, and my niece, notwithstanding, will and does marry him, then shall she forfeit all I have bequeathed her.

This tense is very much used in Holy Writ, from which the following sentences are taken.

Themes.

Be not ashamed of the testimony of our Lord. Whosoever *shall confess* me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven: but whosoever *shall deny me* before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven: and whosoever *shall be ashamed* of me, and of my words, in this sinful generation, of him also shall the Son of man be ashamed, when he *cometh* in the glory of his Father.

Whatever troubles *shall befall* any of you, he ought to say, It is the Lord, let him do what seemeth him good.

If it *be* possible, let this cup pass from me; nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.

If I *shall find* favour in the eyes of the Lord, he will prosper me in my ways; but if he *have* no delight in me, behold here am I, let him do to me as seemeth good unto him.

Although the fig-tree *shall not blossom*, neither *shall* fruit *be* in the vine, the labour of the olive *shall fail*, and the fields *shall yield* no meat, the flock *shall be* cut off from the fold, and there *shall be* no herd in the stalls; yet I will rejoice in the Lord, I will joy in the God of my salvation.

[N.B. All the verbs of the last sentence from Habakkuk except the last, belong to the Spanish future of the subjunctive, without which the sentence could no tbe complete.]

Meaning of words.—To be ashamed, *avergonzarse*; to confess, *confesar*; to deny, *negar*; word, *palabra*; sinful, *pecador*; to come, *venir*; trouble, *trabajo*; to befall, *suceder*; to seem, *parecer*; to find, *hallar*; to prosper, *prosperar*; way, *camino*; to delight, *deleitarse*; behold, *hé aqui*; fig-tree, *higuera*; to blossom, *florecer*; vine, *cepa*; olive, *olivo*; field, *campo*; to yield, *dar*; meat, *carne*; flock, *rebaño*; fold, *redil*; herd, *manada*; stall, *pesebre*; to rejoice, *regocijar*.

Infinitive Mood.

The English verbs, having no proper termination for the present of the infinitive, must assume the particle *to*, as a sign to distinguish the infinitives (to *love*, to *sleep*, &c.) from the substantives (*love*, *sleep*, &c.). But this particle is also a preposition, which is rendered in Spanish by two other different prepositions; so that *to*, before an English verb, ought sometimes not to be translated in Spanish; at other times it must be rendered by *á*, and at others by *para*, the discrimination of which very much perplexes the scholar. The following rules will help to clear this difficulty.

I. When the English sentence begins with the infinitive, as *to eat*, *to drink*, the particle *to* ought to be omitted in the Spanish translation; as *comer*, *beber*, &c.

II. When the English infinitive is governed by another verb, as 'to learn to swim,' 'I go to walk,' 'he went to fish,' &c., the word *to* becomes a preposition in Spanish; as, *aprender á nadar*, *voy á pasear*, *fué á pescar*, &c.

III. When the particle *to*, preceding the English verb, either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence, may be rendered by *in order to*, the preposition *para* must be used before the Spanish infinitive; as, 'to spend, one must have means,' *para gastar se necesita dinero*; 'study is necessary to learn,' *el estudio es necesario para aprender*, &c.

These few rules will be sufficient to guide the student in the use of the infinitive; and this subject will be treated more extensively in the Syntax of Prepositions. Here we shall explain the various tenses of the Spanish infinitive.

Present.—The Spanish infinitive has the singularity of being used as a substantive, and declined through all the cases with the masculine article. When employed in this manner, it expresses very elegantly, not only the action, but the habitude of doing the same. Ex.—

El leer enriquece la memoria.	*Reading enriches the memory.*
El hablar con gente de juicio es una dulce recreacion.	*To talk with persons of good sense is a sweet recreation.*
Su enfermedad es efecto *del beber.*	*His disease is the effect of drinking.*
Era muy adicto *al jugar.*	*He was addicted to gambling.*
No le permitieron *el hablar.*	*They did not permit him to talk.*
Se ha enflaquecido *con el ayunar.*	*He has grown lean by fasting.*

The English gerund corresponds to this Spanish infinitive; but being deprived of the article, it has less energy.

Future infinitive.—This future tense of the infinitive mood is of very frequent use in Spanish: it is formed with any one of the auxiliary verbs, *haber*, *tener*, or *estar*, and the infinitive of the principal verb; but the two verbs must be connected by a preposition or conjunc-

tion, as *haber de, tener que,* or *estar por,* as has been remarked at page 81. Ex.—

Yo he de ir hoy, y el ha de venir mañana.	*I am going today, and he will come tomorrow.*
Yo tengo que escribir muchas cartas, y tu no tienes que hacer cosa alguna.	*I have many letters to write, and you have nothing to do.*
Estamos por marchar.	*We are about to start.*

The English future, formed with the auxiliary verbs *to be* or *to have,* corresponds very often to these future expressions of the Spanish; as, *I am to dine with a friend.* There are, however, many cases in which this Spanish future of the infinitive must be rendered in English by the future of the indicative; as, *Yo he de aplicarme para ganar el primer premio*; I shall study with assiduity, to get the first prize.

But when this future is formed by annexing a personal pronoun to the infinitive of the principal verb, it gives to the discourse so much elegance and majesty, that one cannot read it in the Spanish classics without emotion. Ex.—

Dar*te* he mi hija, porque has respetado su virtud.	*I will give you my daughter, because you have respected her virtue.*
Ten compasion de los pobres, y tener*la* ha Dios de ti.	*Have compassion on the poor, and God will have compassion upon you.*
Mandar*me* has, Señor, y obedecer*te* he siempre.	*Thou shalt command me, Lord, and I will always obey thee.*

Gerund.—Of the three Latin gerunds in *di, do,* and *dum,* the second is the only one remaining in Spanish. It is indeclinable, and consequently may be applied to nouns in both numbers, and without distinction of gender.

The English verbs having but one termination, *ing,* both for the gerund and present participle, grammarians are well justified in giving to it the appellation of pre-

sent participle; but the Spanish verbs having the terminations *ando* and *endo* for the gerund, and *ante, ente* for the present participle, we cannot confound these two verbal modifications.

The gerund in Spanish must be considered as a verbal adjective, because it cannot stand without a substantive, either expressed or understood, to which it may be referred; or it must have a verb by which it may be determined. When the gerund relates to a verb, it must follow the same tense as the verb by which it is governed:—*Me voy paseando, me iba paseando, me fuí paseando, me iré paseando,* &c. The gerund in these instances is in the present, the preterimperfect, the preterperfect, and in the future:—*I am walking, I was going a-walking, I went a-walking, I shall go a-walking,* &c. The Spanish gerund governs the ablative case with the preposition *en,* 'in'; and then it expresses the future or the preterperfect; as, *en respondiendo á esto,* &c., when he shall answer this, &c.; or *en diciendo esto,* having said that, &c.

The Spanish gerund in many instances becomes an active participle, and particularly when it is preceded by another gerund; as, *estando escribiendo,* while I was writing; *yendo meditando,* as I walked ruminating, &c. These are the properties of the gerund in Spanish; and as its use is, in many respects, different from the English present participle, its application will be ascertained by the following rules.

I. When the English present participle is taken absolutely, it ought to be rendered in Spanish by the gerund. Ex.—

Hablando con propiedad no hay tal cosa como fortuna.	*Properly speaking there is no such thing as chance.*

II. When the English present participles are construed as substantives, having the place of nominatives, or when they are preceded by any preposition, they must be rendered in Spanish by the infinitive, with the masculine article. Ex.—

El madrugar es muy bueno para la salud.	*Early rising is conducive to health.*
El privar á uno de bienes temporales, es algunas veces causa de aumentar la riqueza espiritual.	*The taking away worldly riches sometimes tends to the increasing of spiritual substance.*
De los tres hermanos, el uno es aficionado á leer, otro pasa su tiempo en tocar el violin, y el otro es famoso para cantar; y ninguno de ellos es adicto á jugar.	*One of the three brothers is fond of reading, another passes his time in playing the violin, and the other is famous for singing; and none of them is given to gambling.*

But in most instances it will be better to make use of the corresponding substantives in Spanish, and to say, —*aficionado á la lectura, á la musica, al canto, al juego.*

III. When the gerund in English is preceded by the auxiliary verb *to be*, it is rendered by the Spanish gerund, and the auxiliary verb *estar*. (See page 88). Ex.—

Está viajando en Alemania.	*He is travelling in Germany.*
Algunos estaban riendo y otros llorando; otros estaban riñendo y otros durmiendo.	*Some were laughing and some were crying; some were quarrelling and others sleeping.*

But it will be more elegant in Spanish to omit the auxiliary, and to put the principal verb in the same tense with the auxiliary; as, *el viaja*; *unos reian y otros lloraban*, &c.

IV. When the English present participle is used as an adjective, it must be rendered in Spanish by its corresponding adjective. Ex.—

Una muger seductora.	*A seducing woman.*
Un niño encantador.	*A charming boy.*
Una espresion desagradable.	*An offensive expression.*

These present participles are elegant in English, and

their translation in Spanish by the adjectives is less energetic: sometimes, however, they are rendered by the Spanish present participle, when they become equally emphatic; as, *Una oportunidad incitante, una actitud imperante, una situacion correspondiente,* &c.

Themes.

And when I looked towards Getica I could see the
mirar *ver*

Getæ waging war; and when I passed over to the
hacer guerra *estar con*

Scythians, I could behold them wandering about in their
Escita *observar* *vagar*

waggons: directing my eyes a little to the other quarter, I
carro *echar* *vista* *parage*

saw the Egyptians tilling the ground: and the Phœnician
Egipcio cultivar tierra *Fenicio*

was trading, and the Cilician robbing; the Spartan was
traficar *robar*

flogging, and the Athenian engaged in his law-suit.
azotar *Ateniense ocupar* *pleito*

The Lacedemonians, both in private and public, indi-
Lacedemonio *privado*

vidually put up nearly the same prayer, requesting the
rogar casi *plegaria suplicar*

Gods to give them the honourable with the good: and
Dios *dar* *honroso* *bueno*

no one could hear them praying for more.
oir *orar*

Just as if one should accuse a pilot, after having done
asi como *acusar piloto* *hacer*

everything for safety, and equipped his vessel with
todo *seguridad aparejar* *barco*

everything by which he supposed she could be preserved,
suponer *salvar*

then, when she has encountered a storm, her rigging
resistir borrasca jarcia
shattered, or even wholly destroyed,—of being the
hacer pedazos aun enteramente destruir
cause of the shipwreck.
naufragio.

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

This part of speech is so called, because it partakes both of the nature of a noun and of a verb. Two sorts of participles are mentioned in the grammars of modern languages; but properly speaking there is but one,—the past participle. English grammarians have given the appellation of present participle to the verbal termination *ing*, called in other grammars the GERUND; and in doing so they are justified, because it has in most cases the signification of an active participle; but then they must abandon the other verbal noun, the *gerund* having but one termination for both. This is not the case in Spanish, where there is a termination for the gerund, as stated at page 169, and another for the present participle, and each has its own province, so that the one cannot be confounded with the other.

The present participle, with its influence on other parts of speech, was much used in Spanish previously to the fifteenth century; as, *La segunda batalla que hizo Anibal fue* pasante los *montes pirineos*. *Mientras vivió este rey fue* temiente á *Dios*. But how this kind of expression, so congenial to the majesty of the Spanish language, has been neglected, is unaccountable. The fact is, that there are but few participles remaining in use, and even these, being deprived of the government of other words, are now properly considered mere adjectives, and are sometimes used substantively; as, *un litigante incómodo*, a troublesome litigious man; *un com-*

batiente irresistible, an irresistible combatant; &c. We shall therefore treat here only of the past participle, which forms a prominent part of the Spanish language.

Section I.

Analysis of the Participle.

The Spanish participles are either active or passive: they are active, when preceded by the auxiliary verb *haber*, and are always indeclinable; they are passive, when preceded by the auxiliary verb *ser*, and then they have gender and number.

The active participles, when regularly formed, end in *ado* or *ido*. The following verbs have their participles irregular.

Abrir, *to open*,	abierto, *open.*
absolver, *to absolve*,	absuelto, *absolved.*
Cubrir, *to cover*,	cubierto, *covered.*
Decir, *to say*,	dicho, *said.*
disolver, *to dissolve*,	disuelto, *dissolved.*
Escribir, *to write*,	escrito, *written.*
Hacer, *to make*,	hecho, *made.*
Morir, *to die*,	muerto, *dead.*
Poner, *to put*,	puesto, *put.*
Resolver, *to resolve*,	resuelto, *resolved.*
Ver, *to see*,	visto, *seen.*
volver, *to turn*,	vuelto, *turned.*

And their compounds, as *compuesto*, *encubierto*, &c.

The following verbs have two participles, one regular and the other irregular.

Ahitar, *to surfeit*,	ahitado,	ahito.
Bendecir, *to bless*,	bendecido,	bendito.
Compeler, *to compel*,	compelido,	compulso.
concluir, *to conclude*,	concluido,	concluso.
confundir, *to confound*,	confundido,	confuso.
convencer, *to convince*,	convencido,	convinto.

convertir, *to convert*,	convertido,	converso.
Despertar, *to awake*,	despertado,	despierto.
Elejir, *to elect*,	elejido,	electo.
enjugar, *to dry*,	enjugado,	enjuto.
excluir, *to exclude*,	excluido,	excluso.
expeler, *to expel*,	expelido,	expulso.
expresar, *to express*,	expresado,	expreso.
extinguir, *to extinguish*,	extinguido,	extinto.
Fechar, *to date*,	fechado,	fecho.
fijar, *to fix*,	fijado,	fijo.
Hartar, *to glut*,	hartado,	harto.
Incluir, *to inclose*,	incluido,	incluso.
incurrir, *to incur*,	incurrido,	incurso.
insertar, *to insert*,	insertado,	inserto.
invertir, *to invert*,	invertido,	inverso.
injerir, *to graft*,	injerido,	injerto.
Juntar, *to join*,	juntado,	junto.
Maldecir, *to curse*,	maldecido,	maldito.
manifestar, *to show*,	manifestado,	manifiesto.
marchitar, *to fade*,	marchitado,	marchito.
Omitir, *to omit*,	omitido,	omiso.
oprimir, *to oppress*,	oprimido,	opreso.
Perfeccionar, *to perfect*,	perfeccionado,	perfecto.
prender, *to seize*,	prendido,	preso.
prescribir, *to prescribe*,	prescribido,	prescrito.
proveer, *to provide*,	proveido,	provisto.
Recluir, *to shut up*.	recluido,	recluso.
romper, *to break*,	rompido,	roto.
Soltar, *to let loose*,	soltado,	suelto.
suprimir, *to suppress*,	suprimido,	supreso.
suspender, *to hang up*,	suspendido,	suspenso.

N.B. The student will observe, that the regular participles of the first column must be used with the auxiliary verb *haber*, and the irregular ones of the second column with the verb *estar* or *ser*, according to the different meaning of these verbs, as explained in page 88. There are four of these irregular participles which may form compound tenses with *haber*. They are the following:

prender, *ha prendido* or *ha preso.*
prescribir, *ha prescribido* or *ha prescrito.*
proveer, *ha proveido* or *ha provisto.*
romper, *ha rompido* or *ha roto.*

There are other participles which become verbal adjectives, and so have an active signification; these are the following:

Acostumbrado, *one who is wont.*
agradecido, *grateful.*
atrevido, *daring.*
Bien cenado, *one who has well supped.*
bien comido, *one who has well dined.*
bien hablado, *one who speaks very politely.*
bien parecido, *a good-looking man.*
Callado, *discreet.*
cansado, *tiresome, troublesome.*
comedido, *courteous.*
Desesperado, *a desperate man.*
disimulado, *a sly or crafty man.*
Entendido, *intelligent.*
esforzado, *courageous.*
Finjido, *hypocritical.*
Leido, *learned.*
Medido, *unassuming.*
mirado, *circumspect.*
moderado, *moderate.*
Ocasionado, *insolent, provoking.*
ozado, *audacious.*
Parado, *inactive.*
partido, *frank, liberal.*
pausado, *quiet, tranquil.*
porfiado, *obstinate.*
preciado, *valuable.*
precavido, *prevented.*
presumido, *presumptuous.*
Recatado, *cautious.*
Sabido, *a learned man.*
sacudido, *a beaten man.*
sentido, *a sensible man.*
sufrido, *forbearing.*
Trascendido, *acute, keen.*
Valido, *a favourite.*

These participles are sometimes used as adjectives, and at other times as substantives with the corresponding article; as, *el atrevido*, the daring man; *la disimulada*, the dissembling woman; or, *un hombre atrevido, una muger disimulada.* There can be no difficulty in this double employment of them, as they are easily distinguished by the article, and by the place they have in the sentence. The following stanza of Arcilla contains several of these participles, used both as substantives and adjectives.

Guardarse puede el sabio *recatado*
Del público enemigo *conocido*,
Del perverso, insolente, del malvado;
Pero no del traidor, nunca *ofendido*,
Que en hábito de amigo *disfrazado*
El desnudo puñal lleva *escondido*:
No hay contra el desleal seguro puerto,
Ni enemigo mayor que el *encubierto*.
La Araucana, canto xxxi. oct. 4.

Section II.

Syntax of the Participle.

The first function of the participle is to form the compound tenses in the three conjugations; but with this essential difference, that with some verbs they are indeclinable, and with others declinable: these distinct properties will be shown by the following rules.

I. All participles are indeclinable with the auxiliary verb *haber*. Ex.—*He escrito, he leido; hemos escrito, hemos leido*, is equally said by a man or woman, or by many men or women. These participles are invariable, whether the accusative be of the masculine or of the feminine gender; as, *he escrito un libro*, or *he escrito una carta*.

II. When the auxiliary verb *tener* is a mere substitute for *haber*, the participle is also indeclinable; as, *tengo entendido, tenemos entendido*, which may be said, whatever be the nominative. But when *tener* is used as an active verb, which is known by its being followed by an accusative, the participle becomes an adjective, and consequently it must agree, both in gender and number, with the following substantive. Ex.—*Tengo escrito un libro, tengo escritos dos libros; tengo escrita una carta, tenemos escritas dos cartas.*

III. When the verbs *tener* and *llevar* are used as auxiliaries instead of *haber*, to give more energy to the expression, the participle may agree with the accusative, as if *tener* and *llevar* were then active verbs. Ex.—

Tengo oido el consejo que vm. me ha dado.

I have listened to the advice you have given me.

El ministro tiene otorgada la suplica que vm. le ha hecho.

The minister has granted the petition you have sent to him.

Llevamos consentidos los peligros que acompañan á la guerra.

We are persuaded of the dangers accompanying war.

Llevais entendidas las ordenanzas que se han intimado á todos.

You have heard the regulations which have been made known to all.

IV. Another province of the participle is to form the passive voice of verbs, and in this employment it admits the plural and the feminine termination like adjectives; as, *soy amado* or *amada*; *estamos convidados* or *convidadas*.

But the most elegant use of the Spanish participle is that form called the *absolute*, because it is not influenced by the nominative nor by the verb. As in Latin, it is in the ablative case, depending on the preposition *despues de*, which is understood, and by which the phrase may be resolved. Ex.—

Estudiada bien por cada uno su lengua nativa, se abre un camino facil para aprender las estrangeras.

Every one having learned well his native language, an easy road is opened to acquire the foreign tongues.

Invadida la nacion por un ejército irresistible, é *impelidos* los habitantes por el amor natural de independencia, abandonaron los instrumentos de labranza para tomar las armas: sangre derramada sin piedad, y un hambre aun mas desoladora, fueron la consecuencia fatal de aquella

The nation being invaded by an irresistible army, and the inhabitants roused by the natural love of independence, they abandoned the implements of husbandry to take arms: blood unmercifully shed, and dearth still more exterminating, were the fatal consequences of that barbarous irruption; until

barbara irrupcion; hasta que *expelido* el enemigo de todo el pais, quedo vengado el honor, asegurada la libertad, y restablecida la abundancia.

the enemy being entirely expelled from the country, its honour was revenged, liberty secured, and abundance restored.

Llegado al trono el victorioso general, puso su espada á los pies del soberano.

The victorious general, having arrived at the throne, laid his sword at the foot of the sovereign.

Hecho este homenage, se levantó y partió.

This homage being paid, he rose and departed.

Acabada la cena, y *despedidos* los convidados, reinó en el palacio un profundo silencio.

The supper being finished, and the guests gone, a profound silence prevailed in the palace.

Obtenido que hubo el perdon, fué á poner en libertad al preso.

As soon as he obtained the pardon, he went to set the prisoner at liberty.

All these sentences may be resolved, in good Spanish, either by expressing the preposition *despues de*, which is there understood, or by placing the gerund of the auxiliary verb, as in English, before the participle; as, *despues de haber obtenido el perdon*, or *habiendo obtenido el perdon*, &c.: but these constructions are not so elegant, —nay, they are tasteless in writing.

Themes.

Being now resolved to be a poet, I saw everything
resolver *poeta* *ver*

with a new purpose; my sphere of attention was
intento *esfera*

suddenly magnified, and no kind of knowledge
repentinamente *extender* *especie* *conocimiento*

was to be overlooked.
descuidar

When this thought had taken possession of my
pensamiento *tomar*

mind, I considered every moment as wasted which did
mente *perdido*
not bring me nearer to Abyssinia.
traer *mas cerca*

The princess being thus reconciled to herself, found
princesa *sosegada* *hallar*
that no evil is insupportable but that which is accom-
mal *sino* *acom-*
panied with consciousness of wrong.
pañar *sentimiento* *agravio*

Being again comforted with new assurances of speedy
de nuevo animar *persuasion* *pronto*
liberty, I was for some days diverted from impatience
dia *distraer*
by the novelty of the place.
lugar

Exercise.

The enemy being encamped under the very walls, kept the citizens in constant alarm.

The Syracusans and their allies having been vanquished, and having carried off their dead under a truce, they thought necessary to desist from their attempt.

When a friend is carried to his grave, we at once find excuses for every weakness, and palliations of every fault.

One morning, while he sat busied in those speculations which afterwards astonished the world, an old female domestic, who served him for a housekeeper, brought him word that an elderly gentleman and his daughter had arrived in the village the preceding evening, on their way to some distant country, and that the father had been suddenly seized in the night with a dangerous disorder; which on being heard by the good man, he laid aside the volume in his hand, and broke off the chain of ideas it had produced.

Meaning of words.—To encamp, *acampar*; wall, *muralla*;

to keep, *mantener*; citizen, *ciudadano*; ally, *aliado*; to vanquish, *vencer*; to carry, *llevar*; dead, *muerto*; truce, *tregua*; friend, *amigo*; grave, *sepultura*; to find, *hallar*; weakness, *debilidad*; fault, *falta*; morning, *mañana*; to sit, *asentarse*; to be busy, *estar ocupado*; to astonish, *asombrar*; housekeeper, *ama de llaves*; elderly, *anciano*; village, *lugar*; evening, *tarde*; way, *camino*; country, *pais*; suddenly, *repentinamente*; to seize, *atacar*; night, *noche*; dangerous, *peligroso*; to hear, *oir*; to lay aside, *poner á un lado*; hand, *mano*; to break off, *interrumpir*; chain, *cadena*.

Observations on the Participle.

The nature of the Spanish past participle, and its most usual applications, have been sufficiently explained in the preceding pages, with respect to the rules of its syntax: there are, however, many phrases in which it has been construed by elegant Spanish writers in various other forms, for the sake of conciseness and grace; and although these expressions are not of such importance as to form rules, it may be proper here to mention some, in order that the student may easily distinguish these idiomatical phrases, should he find them in classical authors.

1. It is very common to find the participle of verbs standing alone, the substantives to which it has relation having been before expressed. Ex.—

Informado el general que una tropa de soldados enemigos estaban emboscados junto á su campo, salió á reconocer la campaña; y *descubiertos*, mandó luego rodearlos para que no se escapasen.

The general being informed that a troop of soldiers of the enemy were in ambush near his encampment, went to reconnoitre the country; and the enemy being discovered, he gave orders to surround them, that they might not escape.

Entrado el magistrado en la sala, mandó traer á su presencia los dos prisioneros sospechados del

The magistrate having entered the court, ordered the two prisoners suspected of the murder to be brought

homicidio; *venidos*, dió orden de separarlos, para examinar á cada uno en ausencia del otro.

into his presence; and being brought, he directed them to be separated, in order to examine each in the absence of the other.

2. The auxiliary verb *ser*, which forms the infinitive of the passive voice, is often suppressed, and the participle used as a nominative:—this only happens when the preposition *de* or *para* governs the infinitive. Ex.—

Esos hombres que vm. alaba tanto, no son, en mi opinion, dignos de *mencionados*.

Those men you praise so highly are not, in my opinion, worthy of being mentioned.

Me hallé anoche en compañia de unos oficiales Polacos, los que refirieron tales crueldades de los Rusos, que no son *para contadas*.

I was last evening in company with some Polish officers who related cruelties of the Russians which cannot be told.

Dos casos muy notables refieren las historias, que acabaron de turbar el animo de Motezuma, y no son *para omitidos.—Solis.*

History mentions two remarkable events, which entirely confounded the mind of Motezuma, and they ought not to be omitted.

Se hubiera fortificado Hernan Cortes en este puerto, si se hallara con fuerzas bastantes *para divididas*.

Hernan Cortes would have fortified himself in this position, if he had had sufficient troops to divide them into two corps.

The same may be said when the auxiliary verb *estar* forms the passive voice; as, *despues de acabado*, after it is finished; *despues de yo muerta, ábrase mi testamento*; after I am dead, let my will be opened.

3. Sometimes the participle is found after the active verb to which it belongs, and in other cases it is repeated with the signification of an adjective; and this repetition

is not quite superfluous, since it enlarges the meaning of the principal phrase. Ex.—

El relojero que recomiendo á vm. me ha *hecho* un relox bien *hecho*.

The watchmaker I recommend to you has made for me a well made watch.

Esto es *acabar* una cosa bien *acabada*.

That is to finish a thing well finished.

Tratemos nuestros cuerpos de la misma manera que trata un discreto padre á un hijo que *cria* muy bien *criado*.—*Granada*.

Let us treat our bodies in the same manner as a discreet father brings up a son (very well educated).

Tengamos por sospechoso todo lo que *quisieremos* muy *querido*, si no fuere muy examinado.—*Ib.*

Let us suspect whatever we may happen to love (with much love), unless it is previously well examined.

4. The participle is sometimes preceded by the neuter article *lo*, as has been said of the substantive at page 14, whether the participle be in the singular or plural, or whether of the masculine or feminine gender, and then it forms an elegant construction in Spanish. Ex.—

No puedo espresar á vm. *lo agradecido* que estoy á sus favores.

I cannot express to you how grateful I am for your favours.

Siento informar á vm. *lo enojados* que están mis colegas con la carta que vm. ha publicado.

I regret to inform you how vexed my colleagues are at the letter you have published.

Se sabe *lo atrasada* que estaba la quimica á principios del siglo pasado.

It is known how much chemistry was neglected at the beginning of the last century.

Me admira *lo bien escritas* que están las novelas del Caballero Walter Scott.

I admire the style in which the novels of Sir Walter Scott are written.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE ADVERB.

Adverbs are words joined to verbs, and solely applied to indicate their extent, their manner, or the circumstance of the action expressed by them. When we read in the Gospel, *Cristo amó tiernamente á Juan;* or, *Judas vendió vilmente á su maestro*, we may form an adequate idea of the extent of the love that Christ had for John, or of the base manner in which Christ was sold by Judas.

Adverbs are often found in Spanish joined to substantives, adjectives, and participles, but there is always a verb understood; for instance, *Un hombre naturalmente bueno no es adaptado para intrigas politicas*: the adverb here does not relate directly to the substantive *man*, nor to the adjective *good*, but to the circumstance of a man *being* naturally good. *Se siente perder lo verdaderamente estimado*: the adverb is here also without a verb expressed, but the extent of the signification of the participle *esteemed*, supposes the verb *to be*, which is expressed in English,—'It is painful to lose what *is* truly esteemed.'

Spanish adverbs may be considered according to their *expression*, or according to their *signification*. With respect to the first, they are either simple, as *presto* soon, *tarde* late; or compound, by the addition of one or more syllables, as *ademas* besides, *asimismo* likewise; and also all those ending in *mente*, as *concisamente* concisely, &c. There are other adverbs, formed with two or more words, and for that reason they are called adverbial expressions; as, *algunas veces* sometimes, *de aqui en adelante* hereafter, *sin que ni porque* without reason, &c.

With respect to their signification, grammarians divide them into adverbs of time, place, order, quantity, quality, and many other classes, which are obvious to the learner. Convinced by experience that students do not attend to such distributions, and that it is more pro-

fitable and interesting to know what adverbs in Spanish correspond to the same in English, and *vice versá*, I have collected all the Spanish adverbs of a different etymology from the English ones, and placed them alphabetically in the Appendix, in order that scholars may easily learn them at once, and without the trouble of referring to the dictionary. With respect to the English adverbs derived from the Latin, most of them are easily rendered into Spanish, by substituting the termination *mente* for *ly*, if the adjectives from which they are formed end in *e*; but if they end in *o*, this letter must be changed into *a*, forming the termination *amente*, as from *claro* clear, *claramente* clearly, &c.

Syntax of the Adverb.

The syntax of the adverb, as a part of speech, may be reduced to the place it ought to occupy in the phrase: the following rules will show in what position the Spanish adverbs are placed with the greatest grammatical propriety.

I. The adverbs *como, cuando, donde*, &c., when used interrogatively or affirmatively, ought to precede the verb, in order to give a full sense to the expression. Ex.—

Como está vm.?	*How are you?*
Cuando volverá su hermano?	*When will your brother return?*
Donde podré hallarle?	*Where can I find him?*
Como todos hacen.	*As all people do.*
Cuando yo vuelva iré á verla.	*At my return I will go to see her.*
Donde quiera que se halle.	*Wherever he may be.*

II. The adverbs that qualify the verb, and particularly those which end in *mente*, are better placed after the verb. Ex.—

La espedicion Francesa llegó felizmente á Argel.	*The French expedition arrived happily at Algiers.*

III. In Spanish, no adverb can be placed between the auxiliary verb *haber* and the participle, according to the principle laid down at page 115.

It happens very frequently that two or more adverbs ending in *mente* modify the same or the only verb of the phrase, and in such cases the termination *mente* is reserved for the last, to avoid an inharmonious repetition. Ex.—*Qué sabia, oportuna y elegantemente razonaba Ciceron! Cesar escribió sus Comentarios clara, concisa y elegantemente.*

Observations upon some of the Adverbs.

CUANTO and TANTO.—The student has seen in the Table of Comparisons (page 29), that the English expression, 'The more I am acquainted with that man, the more I esteem him,' is rendered in Spanish by *Cuanto mas* trato á ese hombre, *tanto mas* le estimo. Now I shall add here, that the adverb *mas*, though generally following *tanto* and *cuanto*, is often, and with great elegance, separated by one or more words. Ex.—

Claro está que *cuanto* las cosas son *mas* nobles y mas excelentes, *tanto* son *mas* poderosas para causar mayores deleites.—*L. de Granada.*

It is evident that the nobler and the more excellent things are, the more powerful they are to produce great delights.

Cuanto un rey es *mas* clemente, *tanto* se le debe estimar *mas.*

The more a king is merciful, the more he deserves esteem.

Sometimes *tanto cuanto* are found without any relative. Ex.—

Ofrece tambien el hombre la voluntad con tanto cuanto tiene, sin que le quede otra cosa por ofrecer.—*Granada.*

Man offers his will together with whatever he has, without reserving anything in his power to offer.

Se apartó tanto cuanto le pareció que bastaba para estar seguro.

He withdrew as much apart as appeared to him sufficient to be safe.

Tanto cuanto mas le miro, tanto mas me mueve á compasion su estado infeliz.	*The more I look at him, the more I am moved by his unhappy situation.*

Luego, *presently*.—This adverb has various significations: the most common is, 'soon afterwards';—*lo haré luego*, 'I shall do it by-and-by.' Sometimes it means continuously;—*hazlo luego*, 'do it immediately'; and at other times it has the meaning of the Latin conjunction *ergo*, or *igitur*, 'therefore',—*Es peligroso creer todo, y no creer nada lo es mas*; luego *se debe examinar la verdad*, 'there is danger in believing everything, and not to believe anything is more dangerous still; truth, *therefore*, is to be examined.' *No se puede luego negar que, &c.*, 'it cannot be denied, therefore, that, &c.'

Spanish authors repeat this adverb for the sake of precision, or add to it some circumstance by means of which the sentence acquires more elegance;—*luego luego, luego á la hora, luego en el instante, luego cuando, luego otro dia*, &c., thus expressing, 'immediately,' 'in that very hour,' 'in that very instant,' 'the following day,' &c.

Mas, menos.—These two adverbs may accompany substantives, adjectives, or verbs, without any other word, or may be used with prepositions only. Ex.—

Mas guerra, mas sangre.	*The more war, the more bloodshed.*
Mas rico, mas miserable.	*The richer, the more wretched he is.*
A mas correr.	*At full speed.*
A mas tardar.	*The latest.*
A mas y mejor.	*At best.*
De mas á mas.	*Even further.*
Sin mas acá ni mas allá.	*Without if's or and's.*
Sin mas ni mas.	*Without more ado.*

When *mas* or *menos* are preceded by the article, either in the singular or the plural, the meaning is, *the greatest part*, or *the less in number*. Ex.—

Sirviera en *las mas* ocasiones el acero á la venganza, faltando las armas de fuego.

The sword would on most occasions be used in repairing injuries, were there no fire-arms.

Mas, followed by the preposition *por,* expresses very forcibly the exertions made to obtain an end, but without success. Ex.—

Por mas que rogaron por el reo, no pudieron obtener su perdon, ó comutacion de sentencia.

However active they were for the prisoner, they could not obtain his pardon, nor a commutation of the sentence.

Mas sometimes means 'over and above', and very often 'moreover'. Ex.—

Yo protesto á este señor que todo el mal y daño que estas bestias hicieren, corra y vaya por su cuenta, con *mas* mis salarios y derechos.—*Don Quixote,* II. 17.

I enter my protest against this gentleman, that all the harm and mischief these beasts do shall stand and be placed to his account, with my salary and perquisites over and above.

Menos, followed by *sino,* means 'otherwise'. Ex.—

No podrá ser *menos sino* que presto descubrirémos quien nos dé noticias de ese pais.

It cannot be otherwise, but that we shall soon meet with somebody who will inform us of that country.

Mucho.—This adverb is often used in a superlative sense, and it means 'a great deal'; as, *Aun no estaba la casa acabada con mucho,* 'the house was not yet finished by a great deal,' or 'there was much yet to do in it."

Muy.—This adverb generally corresponds to 'very', when followed by adjectives; as, *muy docto,* very learned, &c. Sometimes, however, it is used in Spanish in an absolute sense, or without an adjective. Ex.—

Este ultimo consejo quiero que lo lleveis *muy* en la memoria.

I wish (very much) you would carry this advice in your memory.

Esta cadena es de oro, y *muy* de oro.	*This chain is made of gold, and of very fine gold.*
Soy *muy* de vm.	*I am wholly yours.*

In the polite style, says the Spanish Academy, *muy* signifies something less than the superlative: Ex.—*muy ilustre*, 'very illustrious,' is less than *ilustrisimo*, 'most illustrious.'

No.—The adverb *no* is not always a negative in Spanish; on the contrary, it is often employed to strengthen an affirmation, when there is a comparison. Ex.—

Mejor es contentarse con poco que *no* estar siempre deseando.	*It is better to be pleased with little, than to be always wishing.*
Mas bien quiero sufrir privaciones que *no* pedir prestado.	*I had rather suffer privations than borrow money.*

No placed before and after *si* makes the affirmation stronger. Ex.—

No sino mas cierto de lo que á vm. le han dicho.	*Not only so, but more certainly so, than what you have been told.*
No sino haceos miel, y comeros han moscas.—*D. Quixote*, II. 49.	*Ay, ay, make yourselves honey, and the flies will devour you.*
No espero *sino* que te vayas.	*I only wish that you would go away.*

No thrice expressed makes an affirmation in speaking ironically; as, *no sino no*, it cannot be otherwise.

No is used as a conjunction, when it means 'for fear that'. Ex.—

Tome vuestra merced, señor Licenciado, este hisopo, y rocie este aposento, *no* este aqui algun encantador, y nos encante en	*Signor Licentiate, take this hyssop, and sprinkle this room, lest some enchanter enchants us, in revenge for what we intend*

pena de la que le queremos dar, echandolos del mundo*.—*D. Quixote*, I. 6.	*to do in banishing them out of the world.*

Nunca, Jamas.—These adverbs express negation, with any verb, in all its tenses, and they may be indifferently used; but when united, they give to the sentence an uncommon energy, the highest degree of negation; as, *Nunca jamás volveré á verla*, 'I will not see her again, no, *not for the world.*'

Jamas may be also joined to *por siempre*, and then it gives a contrary sense with equal energy; it is even more expressive than *por los siglos de los siglos*, 'per secula seculorum'. *Por siempre jamás*, or *para siempre jamás*, 'for ever and ever,' or 'perpetually, and without end.'

Sí, *yes*.—This adverb is often used to give more force to an expression, when it means 'indeed'; as, *Está sí será lectura digna del buen entendimiento de vm.* It is also used in an ironical sense;—*está sí que será buena*, 'that will be a fine thing indeed.'

Themes on the Adverbs.

"Sir," said Imlac, "your ardour is the natural effect
of virtue animated by youth; the time will come when
virtud *juventud* *tiempo* *venir*
you will acquit your father, and perhaps hear with
disculpar *quizas* *oir*
less impatience of the governor. Oppression is in
menos *gobernador*
the Abyssinian dominions neither frequent nor tole-
dominio *ni* *ni*

---

* Mr. Chalumeau, quoting this expression in his translation of the Grammar by the Spanish Royal Academy, exclaims: "*Quel air svelte donne à la phrase la coupure qu'y occasionne l'adverb* no! *Remplacez-le par* por miedo que, *comme elle deviendra subitement lourde et trainante!*"

rated; but no form of government has been yet dis-
pero *gobierno* *todavia*

covered, by which cruelty can be wholly prevented.
enteramente impedir

The vigilance of the supreme magistrate may do
poder hacer

much, but much will still remain undone. He can
todavia quedar por hacer

never know all the crimes that are committed, and can
nunca saber *crimen* *cometer*

seldom punish all that he knows."
rara vez castigar

Guilt and Shame were at first companions,
crimen *verguenza* *primeramente compañeros*

and in the beginning of their journey inseparably
principio *viaje*

kept together. But their union was soon found to
mantenerse junto pero *presto hallar*

be disagreeable and inconvenient to both; Guilt gave
ambos *dar*

Shame frequent uneasiness, and Shame often betrayed
inquietud *amenudo exponer*

the secret conspiracies of Guilt. After long disagree-
secreto conspiracion *despues* *discor-*

ment, therefore, they at length consented to part for
dia *al fin* *consentir* *separarse*

ever. Guilt boldly walked forward alone, to overtake
atrevido andar adelante solo *alcanzar*

Fate, that went before in the shape of an executioner;
ir *figura* *verdugo*

but Shame, being naturally timorous, returned back to
volver *atras*

keep company with Virtue, which in the beginning of
acompañar

their journey they had left behind. Thus, my children,
dejar *así* *hijo*

after men have travelled through a few stages in vice,
viajar *por* *jornada*

Shame forsakes them, and returns back to wait upon
abandonar *servir*

the few virtues they have still remaining.
todavia restante.

Exercise.

Many positions are often on the tongue, and seldom in the mind; there are many truths which every human being acknowledges, and forgets. It is generally known, that he who expects much will be often disappointed; yet disappointment seldom cures us of expectation, or has any other effect than that of producing a moral sentence, or peevish exclamation. He that embarks in the voyage of life, will always wish to advance rather by the impulse of the wind than the strokes of the oar; and many founder in the passage, while they lie waiting for the gale that is to waft them to their wish.

A human soul without education is considered like marble in the quarry, which shows none of its inherent beauties till the skill of the polisher fetches out the colours, makes the surface shine, and discovers every ornamental cloud, spot, and vein that runs through the body of it. Education, after the same manner, when it works upon a noble mind, draws out to view every latent virtue and perfection, which, without such helps, are never able to make their appearance.

Meaning of words.—Truth, *verdad*; being, *ente*; to acknowledge, *reconocer*; to forget, *olvidar*; to expect, *esperar*; to disappoint, *frustrar*; disappointment, *malogro*; to cure, *curar*; peevish, *impertinente*; to embark, *embarcarse*; voyage, *viaje*; to advance, *adelantar*; stroke, *golpe*; oar, *remo*; to founder, *naufragar*; to lie waiting, *aguardar*; gale, *briza*; to waft, *llevar por el aire*; wish, *deseo*.

Marble, *marmol*; quarry, *cantera*; to show, *mostrar*; skill, *destreza*; polisher, *bruñidor*; to fetch out, *hacer salir*; surface,

superficie; to shine, *brillar*; cloud, *nube*; spot, *pinta*; vein, *veta*; to run, *correr*; to work, *trabajar*; to draw out, *sacar*; view, *vista*; help, *ayuda*; able, *capaz*.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

These words are placed before substantives, pronouns, and verbs, and are divided into two classes, *separable* and *inseparable*.

Separable prepositions are those which have a meaning by themselves, and are placed before nouns or pronouns, and after the verb, according to the relation under which two objects may be considered. They are the following:

á, *to* or *at*.
ademas, *besides*.
ante, *before*.
bajo, *under*.
con, *with*.
contra, *against*.
á causa de, *by reason of*.
á falta de, *for want of*.
á pesar de, *in spite of*.
á razon de, *at the rate of*.
cerca de, *near to*.
de, *of*.
desde, *from*.
durante, *during*.
en, *at*, *in*, *on*.
entre, *between*.
hacia, *towards*.
hasta, *till*, *until*.
legos de, *far from*.
para, *to*, *in order to*.
por, *by*, *for*.
salvo, *except that*.
segun, *according to*.
sin, *without*.
sobre, *on*, *upon*.
tocante, *respecting*.
tras, *behind*.

N.B. Some of these prepositions are also considered as adverbs.

Inseparable prepositions are those particles which enter into the composition of nouns and verbs; such as, *ab*, *circun*, *com*, *des*, *inter*, *pre*, *pro*, *re*, *su*, *tras*, and a few more, forming the words *absorver*, *circunvecino*, *disgusto*, *interposicion*, &c. The greater part of these prepositions have no meaning by themselves, but they contribute to

increase the number of nouns and verbs, by altering their signification. The verb *poner*, to put, for instance, changes its meaning in the following manner:—

anteponer, *to place before.*
componer, *to compose.*
deponer, *to depose.*
disponer, *to dispose.*
exponer, *to expose.*
interponer, *to interpose.*
imponer, *to impose.*
oponer, *to oppose.*
posponer, *to postpone.*
presuponer, *to presuppose.*
proponer, *to propose.*
reponer, *to replace.*
sobreponer, *to put one over another.*
suponer, *to suppose.*
trasponer, *to transpose.*

Syntax of the Prepositions.

Prepositions being found in almost every sentence of the Spanish language, and many of them being used arbitrarily, they have endless variations; so that it would require a volume to mention the particular employment of each of the separable prepositions. I shall therefore treat here of those only which are of the most frequent use, which differ most from the corresponding prepositions in English, and consequently are of the greatest importance to students.

A.—The use of this preposition is not less various than frequent; it corresponds to the English *to*, but differs very much in its application: the most notable distinctions are comprehended in the following rules.

I. *A* is put in Spanish before the person or thing in which the action of the verb terminates. Ex.—

Amo á mis amigos, *I love my friends.*
Favorezco á mis vecinos, *I help my neighbours.*
Respeto á mis padres, *I respect my parents.*
Mantengo á mis hijos, *I support my children.*

And so likewise before all accusatives, particularly relating to persons, in order to distinguish them from the nominatives. The freedom of the Spanish construction allowing the subject and the object of the phrase to go before or after the verb, either separate or together,

the accusative without this preposition could not be distinguished from the nominative. Ex.—

Alejandro venció á Dario.	*Alexander conquered Darius.*
Cesar derrotó á Pompeyo en los campos de Farsalia.	*Cæsar routed Pompey in the fields of Pharsalia.*
Hector mató á Patroclo, mató á Hector Aquiles, y á Aquiles Paris mató.	*Hector killed Patroclus, Achilles killed Hector, and Paris killed Achilles.*

But if the accusative cannot be mistaken for the nominative, by having the definite article, the preposition ought to be omitted as superfluous. Ex.—

Aristides amaba la virtud, y Socrates la razon.	*Aristides loved virtue, and Socrates reason.*
Colon descubrió la America.	*Columbus discovered America.*
El general se confundió, y perdió la batalla.	*The general was confounded, and lost the battle.*

II. *A* is always used after verbs of motion; as, *voy á la iglesia*, I go to church; *cayó á tierra*, he fell to the ground, &c.

III. *A* is used before verbs and adverbs governed by another verb; as, *aprender á cantar*, to learn to sing. These two rules are more explained in the use of the Infinitive, at page 166, and in the next chapter.

IV. The price at which things are sold is preceded by *á*. Ex.—Compro el café *á* dos chelines la libra, y el azucar *á* nueve peniques. La bota de vino de Tenerife se vende *á* 20 libras, la de Jerez *á* 35, la de Porto *á* 50, y la de Madeira *á* 60.

The various other employments of this preposition will be better learned by practice and attention.

ANTES DE, DESPUES DE.—The meaning of these two prepositions is *before* and *after*; but both have the peculiarity of retaining the preposition *de* before the infinitive of all verbs, and the conjunction *que* before all

the tenses in the indicative and the subjunctive moods; as, *antes* de *principiar*, before I begin; *despues* de *acabar*, after I have finished: and, *antes* que *principie*, *principiara*, *principiase*, &c. *Despues* que *acabo*, *despues* que *acabé*, *despues* que *acabare*, &c.

De.—The use of this preposition is as multifarious as that of *A*: its principal function is to denote possession, and in this, as in many other cases, it corresponds exactly to *of*; I shall therefore mention here one of its employments in which it differs from the English, leaving other uses of this preposition to be treated of under the Government of the Parts of Speech.

All adverbs, when substituted for prepositions, are followed by *de*. Ex.—

Acerca *de* este asunto,	*Concerning this business.*
Ademas *de* lo que trajo,	*Besides what he brought.*
Se sentó al lado *de* ella,	*He sat down by her side.*
Antes *de* amanecer,	*Before day-time.*
Apesar *de* sus instancias,	*In spite of her entreaties.*
Cerca *de* media noche,	*About midnight.*
Debajo *de* la tierra,	*Under the earth.*
Delante *de* mí,	*Before me.*
Dentro *de* la laguna,	*In the pond.*
Despues *de* su partida,	*After his departure.*
Detras *de* la casa,	*Behind the house.*
Encima *de* la azotea,	*Above the roof of the house.*
Enfrente *de* la puerta,	*Opposite the gate.*
Mas allá *de* Richmond,	*Beyond Richmond.*

Para.—The general meaning of this preposition is *for*, and it always precedes the person for whom any benefit or any harm is intended. Ex.—*La ganancia será para tí, y la pérdida para mí*, the profits will be for thee, and the loss for me. But as this preposition has other applications different from the preposition *for* in English, it will be necessary to mention here the most important employments of *para* in a few rules.

I. It has been already stated in treating of the use

of the tenses, page 167, that all those infinitives before which the English preposition *to* may be substituted by *in order to*, require *para* in Spanish. Ex.—

Como *para* vivir, y no vivo solo *para* comer.	*I eat in order to live, and I do not live only to eat.*
Estudiaba *para* aprender, y aprendia *para* saber.	*I studied to learn, and I learned to know.*
Caminaré apriesa *para* llegar temprano á casa.	*I shall go speedily, to be home early.*
Se toma medicina *para* curar las enfermedades.	*Medicine is taken to cure diseases.*

The end of actions, and the use of things, are expressed in Spanish by the preposition *para*, particularly in interrogation. Ex.—

Para qué crio Dios este mundo, sino *para* su mayor gloria?	*For what reason did God create this world, but for his greater glory?*
Para qué se levanta vm. tan temprano? *Para* estudiar, ciertamente.	*Why do you rise so early? To study, to be sure.*
Los hombres han nacido *para* vivir en sociedad.	*Men are born to live in society.*
Los libros son *para* leer, y los naipes *para* jugar.	*Books are to be read, and cards to play with.*

III. *Para* is often used before adverbs and prepositions, rendering the phrases not dissimilar to the corresponding expressions in English. Ex.—

No deseo el descanso *para* ahora, sino *para* despues.	*I do not desire repose for the present, but for the time to come.*
Qué es la criatura *para* con el Criador?	*What is the creature in comparison with the Creator?*
La generosidad de ese caballero *para* contigo me admira mucho.	*The generosity of that gentleman towards you is really wonderful.*
Poco le alaban *para* lo que merece.	*They say but little of him with respect to his merits.*

Para entre amigos son excusados los cumplimientos.	*Among friends compliments may be excused.*
Todo estará pronto *para* entonces.	*All will be ready by that time.*

Por, *by*.—This preposition generally means *by*, and in passive sentences the use of the two words is the same. There are, however, other cases in which the Spanish *por* is employed differently from the English *by*, the most important of which is the following.

The verbs *estar* to be, and *quedar* to remain, require *por* before the infinitives which are governed by them, when the action is expressed as not begun or not completed, and the meaning in English is then *to be about*, and sometimes *not yet*. Ex.—

Estoy *por* hacer una resolucion, de no dejar *por* acabar lo que buenamente pueda concluir cada dia.	*I am about to make a resolution, not to leave unfinished what I shall be able to finish conveniently every day.*
Hemos andado la mitad del camino, y nos queda *por* andar la otra mitad.	*We have proceeded half the way, and we have yet the other half to go.*
Estaba *por* concluir hoy esta obra, mas cuando me levanté esta mañana, hallé que el cuarto estaba *por* barrer, el fuego *por* encender, y todo estaba *por* hacer, lo que retardó mi trabajo por algunas horas, y esta es la causa de que se quede *por* acabar.	*I was about to finish this work today, but when I got up this morning, I found the room was not yet cleaned, the fire not yet lighted, and nothing was yet done, which prevented me from working for several hours, and that is the reason why it is left unfinished.*

Sobre.—This preposition means *upon*, *on*, and *above*, and with these significations is the same in both languages; but *sobre* has in many instances the meaning of *about* in English. Ex.—

Mi padre tenia *sobre* cincuenta años cuando murió.	*My father was about fifty years old when he died.*
La hacienda que intento comprar tiene *sobre* 200 fanegadas de tierra.	*The estate I intend to buy has about* 200 *acres of land.*
La ciudad de Méjico al tiempo de la Conquista tendria *sobre* trecientos mil habitantes.	*The city of Mexico at the time of the Conquest had about three hundred thousand inhabitants.*
Una bota de vino de Porto contiene *sobre* 500 botellas.	*A butt of port wine contains about* 500 *bottles.*

Tras.—This preposition is both separable and inseparable: as inseparable, it was formerly spelt *trans*, but now *tras*; as separable, it means generally *behind* or *after*. Sometimes it is used with the signification of *besides* or *yet*. Ex.—

Tras ser culpado, es el que mas levanta el grito.	*He is guilty, and yet he complains more bitterly than the innocent.*
Tras cornudo apaleado, y mandale bailar.	*After you break a man's head, give him a plaster to cure it.*

These few observations, it is hoped, will be sufficient to enable the student to acquire a competent knowledge of the Spanish prepositions: and their regular government of other parts of speech will be found classified after the Government of the Verb.

Themes on the Prepositions.

As we rose with the sun, so we never pursued
levantarse *proseguir*
our labour after it was gone down, but returned home
trabajo *ponerse* *volver á casa*
to the family.

To say the truth, I was tired of being always wise.
decir *cansar*

The workman was pleased to find himself so much
trabajador *complacer*
regarded by the prince, and resolved to gain yet higher
atender *principe* *ganar* *alto*
honours.

He was willing to fancy that he could do more, yet
querer *imaginar*
resolved to inquire further before he suffered hope to
resolver *inquirir* *mas* *permitirse*
afflict him by disappointment.
afligir *malogro*

As I was supposed to trade without connexion with
suponerse *traficar*
my father, it was easy for me to become acquainted with
facil *conocer*
the master of a ship, and procure a passage to some
capitan *barco*
other country. I had no motives of choice to regulate
pais *eleccion*
my voyage.
viaje

To do her justice, she was a good-natured notable
hacer *buen natural*
woman.

My son came to ask a blessing from me.
venir *pedir* *bendicion*

During this anxious interval I had full time to look
ansioso intervalo *bastante* *mirar*
round me.
al *rededor*

I was now too far from home to think of returning.
ahora *lejos* *casa* *pensar* *volver*

He had formerly made us the most kind assurances
antes de esto *promesa formal*
of using his interest to serve the family.
usar *interés* *servir*

I instantly knew the voice of my poor child, and
conocer voz pobre niño

flew to her rescue, while the woman was dragging her
volar socorro mientras arrastrar

by the hair.
cabellos

Thus saying, I made an effort to rise from my straw, but wanted strength, and was able only to recline against the wall.

He had scarcely delivered this news, when another came, with looks of haste and pleasure, to inform me that my daughter was found.

Just as he delivered this news my dearest girl entered, and with looks almost wild with pleasure, ran to kiss me in a transport of affection.

Bid the fellow wait, cried our guest, till I shall have leisure to receive him.

Alas! Sir, cried I, whoever you are, pity the poor misguided creature; for what he has done was in obedience to a deluded mother, who, in the bitterness of her resentment, required him, upon her blessing, to avenge her quarrel. Here, Sir, is the letter, which will serve to convince you of her imprudence, and diminish his guilt.

When we reflect on the various schemes this gentleman has laid to seduce innocence, perhaps some one, more artful than the rest, has been found able to deceive him.

Few parents act in such a manner as much to enforce their maxims by the credit of their lives. The old man trusts wholly to slow contrivance and gradual progression: the youth expects to force his way by genius, vigour, and precipitance. The old man pays regard to riches, and the youth reverences virtue. The old man deifies prudence: the youth commits himself to magnanimity and chance. The young man who intends no ill, believes that none is intended, and therefore acts with openness and candour; but his father having suffered the injuries of fraud, is impelled to suspect, and too often

allured to practise it. Age looks with anger on the temerity of youth, and youth with contempt on the scrupulosity of age. Thus parents and children, for the greatest part, live on, to love less and less; and, if those whom nature has thus closely united are the torments of each other, where shall we look for tenderness and consolation?

Meaning of words.—Effort, *esfuerzo*; to rise, *levantarse*; straw, *paja*; to recline, *reclinar*; wall, *pared*; to deliver, *dar*; new, *nueva*; to come, *venir*; looks, *semblante*; haste, *anhelo*; to find, *hallar*; girl, *muchacha*; to enter, *entrar*; wild, *desordenado*; to run, *correr*; to kiss, *besar*; to bid, *mandar*; fellow, *hombre*; to wait, *aguardar*; guest, *desconocido*; leisure, *tiempo*; to cry, *esclamar*; to pity, *compadecerse*; misguided, *mal aconsejado*; to delude, *engañar*; bitterness, *amargura*; resentment, *resentimiento*; to require, *requerir*; blessing, *bendicion*; to avenge, *vengar*; quarrel, *agravio*; guilt, *culpa*; to reflect, *reflexionar*; scheme, *trampa*; to lay, *poner*; artful, *artificioso*; to deceive, *engañar*; parents, *padres*; to enforce, *demostrar*; to trust, *confiar*; slow, *lento*; contrivance, *invencion*; to expect, *esperar*; to pay regard to, *amar*; to deify, *endiosar*; to commit oneself, *fiarse*; chance, *casualidad*; to intend, *intentar*; ill, *mal*; to believe, *creer*; to act, *obrar*; openness, *franqueza*; to suspect, *sospechar*; to allure, *incitar*; to look, *mirar*; anger, *enfado*; contempt, *desprecio*; to look for, *buscar*; tenderness, *ternura*.

CHAPTER X.

OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

Those words which connect the different parts of a sentence, or join two or more sentences to form a period, are called conjunctions. These conjunctions, having different meanings, have been divided by grammarians into as many classes as they are in number; so that it would be more difficult to learn these distinctions than the meaning and application of each; and if the student does not acquire this technical information in his vernacular language, or in the classics, he will certainly not

acquire it in the grammar of a foreign tongue. I shall, therefore, give here an alphabetical list of both simple and compound conjunctions, without separation of classes, by which means they will be more easily committed to memory, and applied in Spanish discourse, according to their corresponding signification in English.

Simple Conjunctions.

Así, *thus.*
como, *as, like.*
cual, *such as.*
cuando, *when.*
empero, *but.*
mas, *but.*
ni, *nor.*
ora, ahora, ya, } *either.*
ó *or* ú, *or.*
pero, *but.*
pues, *then.*
que, *that.*
sea, *either.*
si, *if.*
tal, *so.*
y *or* é, *and.*

Compound Conjunctions.

Además, *besides.*
á fin que, *in order that.*
ahora bien, *well.*
al contrario, *on the contrary.*
á lo mas, *at most.*
á lo menos, *at least.*
á mas de, *besides.*
á menos que, *unless.*
antes de, *before.*
antes que, *before.*
asi que, *so that.*
al punto que, *as soon as.*
asi como, *just as.*
atento que, *considering that.*
asi pues, *so then.*
aun cuando, *although.*
aun supuesto, *even if, granted.*
bien que, *although.*
bien sea, *either.*
bien entendido que, *with a proviso that.*
casi *or* cuasi, *almost.*
como quiera que, *notwithstanding.*
con tal que, *provided.*
cuando mas, *at most.*
cuando menos, *at least.*
dado que, *in case that.*
desde el punto que, *as soon as.*
desde que, *since.*
despues que, *after.*
de suerte que, de manera que, de modo que, } *so that.*
en cuanto á, *as for.*
en efecto, *in fact.*

en fin, *in short.*
entre tanto, *meanwhile.*
entre tanto que, *while.*
en tanto que, *as long as.*
fuera de que, *besides.*
hasta que, *until.*
mientras que, *while.*
por mas que, *however.*
por lo que, *as for.*
por esto, por tanto, } *therefore.*
pues que, puesto que, } *since.*
si no fuera que, *were it not for.*
sea que, *whether.*
sobre que, *whereupon.*
visto que, *since.*

It may be easily observed, that some adverbs and prepositions become conjunctions when they are used to join different parts of speech.

Syntax of the Conjunctions.

All those conjunctions which end with the preposition *de*, govern the verb in the infinitive; and most of those ending with the relative *que*, govern the subjunctive mood.

The English conjunction *and* is always *y* in Spanish, but when the following word begins with *i*, the conjunction is changed into *é* to avoid the disagreeable sound which the coalition of the same vowel would produce; as, *Inglaterra y España, España é Inglaterra; invierno y verano, verano é invierno.*

The same observation applies to the conjunction *or*, which in Spanish is *ó*; but if the following word begins with *o*, this conjunction is changed into *ú*; as, *Oxfordo ó Cambrigia, Cambrigia ú Oxfordo*; *seis ó siete, siete ú ocho.*

Some Spanish authors pretend that the conjunction *y* is to be repeated after each noun in the same sentence, in imitation of the Greek; but the most general practice is to leave it, as in the Latin, for the last nominative or accusative. It would certainly be tedious to hear, *Yo, y tu, y el, y ella iremos juntos mañana al Museo, y al bazaar, y á la galeria, y á la Opera.*

After these general observations I shall mention the peculiarities of some of the simple conjunctions.

Que.—There is not in the whole Spanish language

a word of more frequent use than *que*. It is sometimes a relative pronoun, at other times a conjunction, and not unfrequently a mere particle of ornament, to give additional grace to an expression.

It will be known as a pronoun, when *cual* 'which' may be substituted for it; as a conjunction, when it cannot be changed; and as an ornament, when, if omitted, the sense of the phrase remains perfect. The following period will show its various uses.

"*Que*(1) pensarás cuando te digo *que*(2) mientras yo vivia en la situacion *que*(3) me viste, me sentia mas feliz *que*(4) ahora *que*(5) todo me sobra? Es menester, pues, *que*(6) convengas en una máxima *que*(7) tengo leida, *que*(8) al verdadero filósofo poco le basta."

Here 1, 2, 5, 6, are conjunctions; 3, 4, 7, are pronouns; and 8 is a particle of ornament.

MAS, PERO, SINO.—These three conjunctions correspond to *but* in English, but they cannot be used indifferently. The two first may be used when there is no negation preceding. Ex.—

El Señor N. es caballero, *pero* pobre.

Es rico, *mas* tiene muchos hijos que mantener.

La Señora N. es hermosa, *mas* tambien es muy enfermiza; ella quiere ir á Italia, *pero* no puede viajar.

El uno de los dos hermanos quiere gastar, *mas* no tiene dinero; y el otro tiene dinero, *pero* no quiere gastar.

Le convidé á comer conmigo, *mas* no pudo venir; le insté á que viniera otro dia, *pero* no quiso.

There is here a delicate distinction, depending more on taste than on rules: it is true that both conjunctions may be exchanged for each other in the above phrases, but the position in which they stand above seems to be preferable.

But, after a negation, or in interrogative sentences, is generally translated by *sino*. Ex.—

No fue el padre quien dijo eso, *sino* el hijo.

El correo no partirá mañana, *sino* pasado mañana.

Ese hombre no es literato *sino* un charlatan.

Eso no es cantar *sino* gritar.
Quien habia de ser *sino* él?
Quien creeria tal cosa *sino* un simple?

If, however, the second part of the sentence is not in contrast with the sense of the first, but implies affirmation, *mas* or *pero* are preferable to *sino*. Ex.—

Su padre no era un santo, *pero* era honrado.
Su madre no era hermosa, *mas* era amable.
Mi aposento no es grande, *mas* es cómodo.
Yo no quisiera ir, *pero* me hallo obligado.

Here it may be given as a rule, that *in those sentences where the same verb is repeated,* MAS *or* PERO *ought to be used.*

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE INTERJECTIONS.

Those words by means of which man expresses, almost involuntarily, the sudden emotions of the mind, or the sensations of the body, are called Interjections. Affections being of different sorts, so are the words by which they are expressed: some are expressions of joy and content, others of fear and indignation; some of grief and astonishment; and the signification of others wholly depends on the inflection of the voice, or on a concomitant gesture. These interjections are nearly the same in all languages; at least the emphasis with which they are uttered is the same among both the refined and the barbarous.

The following list will show the most frequent Spanish interjections.

Ah, ah! *ha, ha!*
alto ahí! *stop there!*
ánimo! *cheer up!*
ay! *alas!*
ce! *hark!*
chito! *hush!*
ea! *well!*
ea pues! *well then!*
fú, fú! *fy, fy!*
guay! *oh!*

ha, ha! *ah, ah!*	quita! *God forbid!*
he! *ho!*	tá! *care!*
miz, miz! *puss, puss!*	tate! *take care!*
ó! *oh!*	tente! *hold!*
ola! *holla!*	to, to! (call for a dog.)
qué lastima! *what a pity!*	válgame Díos! *bless me!*
qué porquería! *fy, fy!*	verguenza! *for shame!*

But the more common interjections among Spaniards are

Jesus!
Virgen Maria!
Virgen santísima! } for admiration.

O diablo!
qué demonio! } for contempt.

Interjections being totally unconnected with the other parts of speech, they are not subjected to grammatical rules; I shall, however, add here two observations in the way of syntax.

1. When the interjections *ay* and *ó* have the full sense of *woe* in English, they require the preposition *de* before the following word; as, *Pobre* de *mí! desdichada* de *mi hija!* Oh! poor me! Oh! my unhappy daughter! *O! felices* de *aquellos que no tienen de que arrepentirse!* Oh! happy those who have nothing to repent of! *Mas ay* de *aquel por quien el hijo del hombre será entregado!* But woe unto that man by whom the son of man is betrayed!

2. There is a Spanish interjection very much used in narrative; it is a compound of *ete* with any one of the personal pronouns; as, *Eteme aqui metido en un laberinto!* behold me here lost in a maze! *Cuando menos esperaba étele entrar en mi casa!* when I the least expected, lo! he enters my house!

CHAPTER XII.

OF SYNTAX IN GENERAL.

Syntax is the order and dependence which the various parts of speech ought to have among themselves to form a complete sentence. This scientific arrangement of grammar may be divided into three different parts:—1st, *Concord*, which directs that a word shall be in the same case, gender and number as the word referred to. 2nd, *Regimen*, which requires that a subordinate shall agree with the principal word by which it is governed. 3rd, *Construction*, which prescribes the place that each word ought to occupy in the sentence, to produce clearness, beauty or energy. In treating of each part of speech, I have shown both its nature or etymology, and its individual syntax, giving the most essential rules for distinguishing the various modifications to which each word is subjected, according to the genius of the Spanish dialect; and I shall now conclude by taking a summary view of the grammatical arrangement of all the words put together for the regular formation of sentences.

Section I.

Of Grammatical Concord.

There are three species of Concord,—the adjective with the substantive, the verb with the nominative, and the relative with the antecedent. The article, the pronoun, and the participle, are comprehended in the first species of concord, because none of these words can subsist without a substantive either expressed or understood. When we say, *Estas son las cualidades de un ministro sabio, zeloso y amante de su patria*, all the parts of this sentence are in accordance with the substantive *ministro*.

The concord between the nominative and the verb requires that the latter shall agree in number and person with the former. Ex.—*Convengo en lo que propones; iremos pues á la guerra, y si la fortuna nos*

favoreciere, alcanzaremos tantos honores que muchos nos envidiarán. There is here a perfect concord between the nominatives and the verbs: the pronoun *yo*, I, being understood (as is generally the case with the personal pronouns in Spanish), the verb is in the first person singular,—*I agree*; the pronoun *tu*, thou, being also understood, requires the verb to be in the second person singular,—*to what thou proposest*; the pronoun *nosotros*, we, being likewise understood, requires the verb in the first person plural,—*we shall go*; the nominative *fortuna* requires the third person singular,—*favours us*; the first person plural is used again, because the pronoun *nosotros* is again understood,—*we shall obtain so many triumphs*; and the nominative *muchos* requires the third person plural,—*that many will envy us.* This concordance, as far as the English conjugation of verbs permits, is generally the same in both languages; I shall therefore call the attention of the student only to the following rules on the collective nouns.

I. When the collective noun is followed by a word in the singular, the verb must be likewise in the singular. Ex.—

Una gran multitud de gente *acudia* de cada parte.	*A great multitude of people poured in from every quarter.*
La mayor parte de la nacion *estaba* decidida por la reforma.	*The majority of the nation was decided for reform.*
Todo el ejercito enemigo *fué* derrotado, y toda su escuadra tomada.	*The whole army of the enemy was routed, and the whole fleet was captured.*

II. When the collective noun is followed by a word in the plural, the verb must be also in the plural. Ex.—

Una tropa de Cosacos, lijeros como el viento, fatigaban al ejercito Frances en su retirada.	*A body of Cossacks, light as wind, harassed the French army in its retreat.*

Un gran número de cruzados en Palestina eran Ingleses.	*A great number of crusaders in Palestine were Englishmen.*
La mayor parte de los Mahometanos van á visitar Meca.	*Most Mahometans go to visit Mecca.*

But if the collective pronoun presents an idea independent of the plural noun by which it is followed, the verb ought to be in the singular. Ex.—

La pluralidad de mugeres no está permitida por la religion Cristiana.	*A plurality of wives is not permitted by the Christian religion.*
La multitud de extrangeros que reside en Londres es muy grande.	*The multitude of foreigners residing in London is very great.*

III. The collective nouns *academy*, *assembly*, *committee*, *community*, and others of like import, though in English they often agree with the verb in the plural, require in Spanish the verb to be in the singular. Ex.—

La junta ha examinado el proyecto, y ha dado cuenta á la cámara de los diputados.	*The committee have examined the Bill, and have reported to the House of Commons.*
La Academia Española ha decidido la substitucion de la letra *j* por la *x* en los nombres Alejandro, Jerjes, Quijote, Jerez, &c.	*The Spanish Academy has decided on the substitution of the letter* j *for* x *in the names of Alexander, Xerxes, Quixote, Xerez, &c.*

But if the collective nouns *gente*, *parte*, *resto*, &c., are not followed by any other noun, the verb may be put in the plural, in imitation of ancient Spanish writers, though this concord is now seldom practised. Ex.—

Esta gente aunque los llevan, van de por fuerza.—*Cervantes.*

El resto quedaron muertos y desvalijados.—*Coloma.*

Augusto, acabada la guerra, volvió á Cantabria, donde dió perdon á la muchedumbre; pero porque de alli ade-

lante no se alterasen, confiados en la aspereza de los lugares fragosos donde moraban, les mandó pasasen á lo llano sus moradas, y diesen cierto numero de rehenes.—*Mariana.*

The concord between the relative and the antecedent consists in making the relative pronouns *quien*, who, *cual*, which, and *que*, that, to agree with the nouns to which they have relation, as has been observed at page 63. Ex.—

Fué llamado el piloto á la cámara, *el cual* entró con un semblante triste; le leyó el Comandante las tres acusaciones hechas contra él, *las cuales* confesó; entonces le mandaron ir á tierra, *lo cual* no quiso hacer.

The pilot was called to the cabin, which he entered with a sad countenance; the Commander read the three accusations brought against him, which he confessed; he was then ordered to go on land, which he refused to do.

In this example the first relative *cual* agrees with the nominative *piloto*, in gender, number and case; the second relative *cuales* agrees with the objective *acusaciones*, in gender, number and case; and the third relative *lo cual* is neuter, because it relates to *ir á tierra*, which, not being a substantive, has no gender.

The same concord applies to the relative *que*, if placed instead of *cual*; and both require the article to qualify them.

The relative *cuyo*, having a feminine termination in the singular and plural, does not require any article to agree with the antecedent in gender or in number. Ex.—

He hallado un cortaplumas, aquel *cuyo* sea tómele.

I have found a pen-knife; let him to whom it belongs take it.

Aqui hay una carta, *cuya* letra yo no entiendo.

Here is a letter, the handwriting of which I do not know.

Este es el catálogo de los autores *cuyos* libros son mas estimados.

This is the catalogue of the authors whose books are the most esteemed.

Deme vm. una lista de los autores *cuyas* obras tiene vm. de venta.

Give me a list of the authors whose works you have for sale.

It should be recollected that the relative *cuyo* does not agree in Spanish with the possessor, but with the thing possessed, as has been explained at page 59.

Themes on the Concords.

A brave soldier whose life has been many times
soldado *vida* *vez*
exposed to danger is the glory of his country.
exponer *peligro* *patria*

Every sort of happiness abounds to the diligent man;
felicidad abundar
and men have been observed to conquer the most diffi-
observar *vencer*
cult labours by diligence, and to be praised for their
trabajo *alabar*
industry. Industry is, therefore, a great virtue.
pues *virtud*

The situation in which I find myself placed is very
hallarse *poner*
critical, but I trust that my honour and firmness will
confiar *firmeza*
overcome whatever difficulties my enemies shall lay in
superar *enemigo* *poner*
the way.
camino

Courage and conduct bring men victory. Victory
valor *prudencia traer*
gladdens the minds of the soldiers, who rejoice in
regocijar *mente* *soldado* *gloriarse*
subduing the enemies of their country by force of arms.
subyugar *fuerza* *arma*

War is, indeed, a great evil, but unhappily for
guerra *cierto* *mal*

mankind it is oftentimes necessary.
genero humano *amenudo*

The house, whose foundation is not strong, will fall
casa *cimiento* *caer*

when the wind blows.
viento soplar

The prize for which the student strives cannot be obtained without the utmost application, because it is necessary not only to learn, but to excel all his fellow-students.

There is no talent so useful towards success in business, or which puts men more out of the reach of accidents, than that quality generally possessed by persons of cool temper, and which is in common language called discretion.

Each very opulent man generally gathers round him a circle of the poorest of the people; and the polity abounding in accumulated wealth may be compared to a Cartesian system, each orb with a vortex of its own. Those, however, who are willing to move in a great man's vortex, are only such as must be slaves, the rabble of mankind, whose souls and whose education are adapted to servitude, and who know nothing of liberty except the name.

Wherever I went, said Imlac, I found that poetry was considered as the highest learning, and regarded with a veneration somewhat approaching to that which man would pay to the angelic nature. And yet it fills me with wonder, that, in almost all countries, the most ancient poets are considered as the best: whether it be that every other kind of knowledge is an acquisition gradually attained (and poetry is a gift conferred at once), or that the first poetry of every nation surprised them as a novelty, and retained the credit by consent, which it received by accident at first; or whether, as the province of poetry is to describe nature and passion,

which are always the same, the first writers took possession of the most striking object for description, and the most probable occurrences for fiction, and left nothing to those that followed them but transcriptions of the same events, and new combinations of the same images. Whatever be the reason, it is commonly observed, that the early writers are in possession of nature, and their followers of art; that the first excel in strength and invention, and the latter in elegance and refinement.

Meaning of words.—Prize, *premio*; to strive, *esforzarse*; to learn, *aprender*; to excel, *exceder*; fellow-student, *condiscípulo*; success, *acierto*; business, *negocio*; to put, *poner*; reach, *alcance*; accident, *contratiempo*; to call, *llamar*; to gather, *congregar*; polity, *gobierno*; wealth, *riqueza*; to be willing, *desear*; slave, *esclavo*; rabble, *canalla*; soul, *alma*; servitude, *servidumbre*; to go, *ir*; to find, *hallar*; learning, *literatura*; to regard, *contemplar*; approaching, *semejante*; to pay, *tributar*; to fill, *llenar*; wonder, *admiracion*; country, *pais*; knowledge, *conocimiento*; to attain, *conseguir*; gift, *don*; at once, *de una vez*; to surprise, *sorprender*; novelty, *novedad*; consent, *consentimiento*; province, *oficio*; writer, *escritor*; to take, *tomar*; striking, *sorprendiente*; to leave, *dejar*; to follow, *seguir*; early, *primero*; follower, *imitador*; strength, *vigor*; refinement, *cultura*.

Section II.

Government of the Parts of Speech.

Government means that power or influence which some parts of a sentence have upon others, requiring their assistance, and restricting their dependence, in order that the right sense of each word may be fully understood. This influence, in Spanish grammar, is uniformly called *Regimen*. The article, the adjective, the adverb, the participle, and the interjection, have no influence over other words, because they are not necessary for the perfect sense of a sentence; but the substantive, the preposition, the conjunction, and more particularly the verb, must either govern or be governed by each other, because none of these words separately

can give any complete idea, as may be observed in the following sentence.

If you say *a new actor*, without any previous allusion, nobody will understand the meaning of that substantive; add *and*,—this conjunction by itself, far from giving sense, increases the want of meaning of the former word, because its government does not appear; add *a new actress*,—the conjunction now has its government and its proper use; but the two substantives, being the subject, require some action to have a meaning: add *will perform*,—these substantives have now their government of the verb, and their action is completely explained, but the verb has no signification, because it wants its government; add *Romeo and Juliet*,—the verb has now its government in this accusative, but its meaning is not yet complete, another government being wanted; add *tonight*,—this noun being governed by the verb, extends the idea more, since we know the time; the sense however is not yet perfect, the place not being yet specified: add *at*,—but this preposition without its dependence has no meaning; add *Covent Garden*,—and this substantive being governed by the preposition, the sentence is now complete, and its meaning clear.—*A new actor and a new actress will perform Romeo and Juliet tonight at Covent Garden.* The government and dependence of the parts constituting the above sentence are manifest: the conjunction *and* governs *actress*; the substantives *actor* and *actress* govern the verb *to perform*; this verb governs the noun *tonight*, and the accusative *Romeo and Juliet*; and, lastly, the preposition *at* governs the substantive *Covent Garden*.

In those languages in which the nouns had distinct cases, by being declined, the government of the parts of speech formed the most prominent part of their Syntax; but in modern languages, particularly the southern dialects of Europe, the variety of declensions, and the advantages resulting from it, being sacrificed for the sake of simplicity, the government of words has become very imperfect; verbs governing nouns with only one or two prepositions, and prepositions governing nouns only in

an objective case. The Spanish language, however, keeping its syntax in imitation of the Latin, as has been observed at page 22, requires a particular specification of cases, (though only distinguishable by prepositions,) particularly for the government of the verb.

The government of the nouns and of the conjunctions in Spanish does not differ materially from the same in English, and the few differences arising from idiom have been sufficiently explained in the syntax of those words. It is the government of the Spanish verbs and prepositions that requires further illustration.

Government of the Verb.

Substantive Verbs.

The two Spanish substantive verbs Ser and Estar, *to be*, have no government, because their only functions are to express the attributes of the subject: they require two nominatives only, one before, and another after. Ex.—

La vida es un sueño, y el sueño es la imagen de la muerte.

La noche estaba clara, el camino limpio, y toda la comitiva sumamente alegre.

In the first sentence, *sueño* dream, and *imagen* representation, are two nominatives, as well as *vida* life, all which require only the concord, none of them being governed by the verb.

Neuter or Intransitive Verbs.

The neuter or intransitive verbs have no regimen, because they have no object to act upon; and though sometimes they appear to govern an accusative, it is the government of a preposition either expressed or understood. Ex.—

Andar á caballo,	*to ride on horseback.*
Adherir al dictamen,	*to follow an opinion.*
Ir á la ciudad,	*to go to the city.*
Volver á casa,	*to return home.*

Vivir largo tiempo,	*to live a long life.*
Dormir un sueño tranquilo,	*to have a quiet sleep.*
Correr los mares,	*to roam the seas.*
Bramar de corage,	*to roar with passion.*
Nacer con fortuna,	*to be born to be happy.*
Crecer en virtudes,	*to grow in virtue.*
Nacer para trabajos,	*to be born to suffer.*
Parecer en alguna parte.	*to appear somewhere.*

The accusatives which follow the verbs in the above examples are not governed by the verbs, but by the prepositions, expressed or understood.

Active Verbs.

Active verbs, which may be distinguished from the neuter by the rules mentioned at page 72, have a government, because they may express an action passing to an object different from the nominative or subject,—and for this reason they are called Transitive. This government is either direct or indirect: when direct, it must be in the accusative case; and when indirect, it may be in the dative or in the ablative, and sometimes in the genitive case. Ex.—

El hombre ama á la muger, y la muger respeta al hombre.

Muger, woman, in the first part of this sentence, and *hombre*, man, in the second, are the regimen direct of the verbs *amar* and *respetar*.

El amo acusa al criado de ladron, y el criado convence al amo de injusticia.

Criado, servant, in the first part of the sentence, and *amo* master, in the second, are the regimen direct of the verbs *acusar* and *convencer*; and *ladron* thief, and *injusticia*, which are in the genitive case, are the regimen called indirect.

The regimen direct being the most frequent, we shall here give some important rules concerning it.

I. The regimen direct of the active verb either refers to *persons*, or to *things*: in the first case, the preposition

á ought to precede the noun or pronoun; but no preposition should be put before the names of things. Ex.—

Amo *á* Dios.	*I love God.*
Amo la virtud.	*I love virtue.*
Sirvo *á* mi rey.	*I serve my king.*
Respeto las leyes.	*I respect the laws.*
El reo teme *al* juez, pero teme mas la sentencia.	*The criminal fears the judge, but he fears more the sentence.*

By this simple rule the student may easily distinguish when a Spanish verb requires the preposition *á* before the noun it governs.

II. When the regimen of the verbs is the cause of their action, the preposition *de* generally follows the verb. Ex.—

Aborchonarse uno *de* su conducta,	*to blush at one's conduct.*
Agraviarse *de* algo,	*to take offence at something.*
Alegrarse *de* las nuevas,	*to rejoice at the news.*
Armarse *de* paciencia,	*to provide oneself with patience.*
Bramar *de* coraje,	*to roar with passion.*
Cansarse *de* poco,	*to tire oneself with little.*
Confundirse *de* algo,	*to be confounded at anything.*
Disgustarse *de* todo,	*to be disgusted with everything.*
Perecer *de* hambre,	*to perish with hunger.*
Tiritar *de* frio,	*to shiver with cold.*

III. When there are two verbs in the sentence, the second of which is in the infinitive, this ought to be preceded by *de*, instead of the English sign of the infinitive, and particularly so if the first verb is *tener*. Ex.—

Tener ganas *de* comer,	*to be hungry.*
Tener la fortuna *de* escapar,	*to have the fortune to escape.*
Tener la curiosidad *de* preguntar,	*to have the curiosity to ask.*
Tener la insolencia *de* reirse,	*to have the impudence to laugh.*

Reflective Verbs.

No verb in the passive voice can govern a noun or pronoun; but the reflective verbs generally govern the noun or pronoun in the genitive case by means of the preposition *de*. Ex.—

Convencerse *de* lo contrario,	*to be convinced of the contrary.*
Morirse *de* envidia,	*to die of envy.*
Quitarse *de* ruidos,	*to remove all disputes.*
El se jacta *de* su nobleza,	*he boasts of his pedigree.*
Maravillarse *de* todo,	*to wonder at anything.*

There are, however, many exceptions to this rule; as,

Amañarse *á* escribir,	*to make oneself clever in writing.*
Abrasarse *en* deseos,	*to be inflamed with desires.*
Anticiparse *á* otro,	*to anticipate any one.*
Darse *á* los vicios,	*to give oneself to vices.*
Humillarse *al* mas fuerte,	*to humble oneself to the stronger.*
Rendirse *á* la necesidad,	*to yield to necessity.*

Reflective verbs always govern reflective pronouns, and hence they receive their name; as, *yo me alabo, tu te precias, el se jacta, &c.*

V. The neuter and reflective verbs, by means of a preposition, may also govern another verb in the infinitive. Ex.—

Voy *á* pasearme.	*I am going to take a walk.*
Acostumbrarse *á* trabajar.	*To accustom oneself to work.*
Aprender *á* cantar.	*To learn singing.*
El hombre nace *para* morir: crece *para* poder sustentarse por sí mismo; se casa *para* perpetuar su especie; trabaja *para* mantener su familia; y muere *por* serle la muerte natural.	*Man is born to die: he grows to be able to support himself; he marries to perpetuate his species; he works to maintain his family; and he dies because death is natural to him.*

In the above examples, it may be observed, there are three different prepositions before the infinitive; but they must not be indifferently used, as has been observed at page 193 and following, where their proper use has been explained.

Government of Prepositions.

The student will remember what has been said on the right use of the Spanish prepositions. The place which this part of speech holds in Spanish discourse, and its various applications, have been there explained: their government will be the subject of the remainder of this section.

Prepositions govern the substantive or the pronoun in various cases: some are regular in the case they govern, and others are variable.

Ante, *contra*, *entre*, *hacia*, *hasta*, *segun*, and *tras* constantly govern the accusative. Ex.—

Ante todas cosas.	*Before all things.*
Arrojar una cosa *contra* la tierra.	*To dash a thing against the ground.*
Entre tu y yo.	*Between you and me.*
Entre los dos.	*Between us.*
El venia *hacia* mí.	*He was coming towards me.*
Hasta el fin nadie es dichoso.	*All is well that ends well.*
Segun las costumbres antiguas.	*After the old fashions.*
Andar *tras* alguna cosa.	*To go in pursuit of anything.*

Con, *donde*, *en*, and *sin* constantly govern the ablative. Ex.—

Vm. comerá hoy *conmigo*.	*You will dine today with me.*
Está habituado á ayunar *desde* su juventud.	*He has been accustomed to fast from his youth.*
Estar *en* perfecta salud.	*To be in good health.*

Se llevó el dinero, *sin* otras muchas cosas.	*He carried off the money, besides many other things.*
El ministro vino *con* su familia *en* un barco de vapor *desde* Lisboa hasta Portsmouth *sin* el menor contratiempo.	*The minister came with his family in a steam-boat from Lisbon to Portsmouth without the least inconvenience.*

The government of these two sorts of prepositions being very regular, does not require any further observation. I shall therefore speak upon the government of the prepositions *á*, *de*, *para*, *por*, and *sobre*, each of which governs sometimes one case and sometimes another.

A, PARA, *to*, *for*.—The easiest way to know when these two prepositions govern the dative and when the accusative case, is to attend to the meaning of the verb before them: if the verb implies *benefit* or *harm* to the person or thing which is the object of the expression, both prepositions govern the dative case; but if the object of the expression does not receive *benefit* or *harm* from the action of the verb, they govern the accusative. Ex.—

Todos debemos dar gracias *á* Dios.	*We should all thank God.*
El rey premia *á* los buenos y castiga *á* los malos.	*The king rewards the deserving and punishes the wicked.*
Hace muchos años que se está edificando un palacio *para* el rey.	*They have been many years building a palace for the king.*
Poco vino es bueno *para* la salud.	*A little wine is good for the health.*
El labrador siembra *para* el amo que le mantiene.	*The labourer sows for the farmer who supports him.*

A and *para* in the above examples govern the dative case, because the action of all those verbs is directed to the good of the substantives governed by the prepositions.

Los jornaleros se retiran *á* sus casas al anochecer.

Day labourers retire to their home at night-fall.

Cuando llueve no es agradable salir *á* la calle.

It is not an agreeable thing to go out during the rain.

El cartero viene siempre *á* una hora muy puntual.

The postman always comes at an exact hour.

Recordé *á* mi amigo que era necesario responder *á* la carta recibida de su padre, por el correo que partirá esta noche *para* Falmouth.

I reminded my friend that he ought to answer the letter received from his father, by the mail of this evening for Falmouth.

Los caballos grandes son buenos *para* los coches.

Great horses are good for carriages.

Para la primera vez no lo ha hecho mal.

For the first time he has done it tolerably well.

A and *para* in the above sentences govern the *accusative* case, because the virtue or the power does not pass to the object of the phrase, but relates rather to the nominative.

De, *of, from.*—This preposition governs the genitive, when it indicates possession, always depending on a substantive either expressed or understood; but when it does not depend on any substantive, it then governs the *ablative.* Ex.—

Estos caballos son *de* mi padre.

These horses are my father's.

Esta casa es *de* mi hermano.

This house is my brother's.

El es amante *de* las letras.

He is fond of literature.

Es grande la confusion *de* los reos.

The confusion of the guilty is great.

Tiene la complexion *de* la madre.

She has the complexion of her mother.

De, in the above sentences, governs the *genitive,* be-

cause it depends on the preceding substantives, *casa*, *amante*, &c.

Estos son caballos *de* alquiler.	*These are hired horses.*
Esta casa es *de* piedra.	*This house is of stone.*
Tiene un estante lleno *de* libros.	*He has a bookcase full of books.*
Se quedaron llenos *de* confusion.	*They remained full of confusion.*
Tiene la complexion *de* una India.	*She has the complexion of an Indian woman.*

De, in these sentences, governs the *ablative* case, because it does not depend upon the preceding substantives: and the same nouns have been put for its government, in order to show this nice distinction.

Por, *by*, *for*.—When this preposition is joined with words meaning *active motion*, it governs the *accusative*; but when joined with words expressing *quietness*, it governs the *ablative*. Ex.—

Andar *por* las calles.	*To lounge in the streets.*
Correr *por* los campos.	*To wander in the fields.*
Trabajar *por* la ganancia.	*To work for profit.*

The substantives here are governed in the *accusative* case.

Morir *por* la patria.	*To die for one's country.*
Sufrir *por* otro.	*To suffer for another's sake.*
Comulgar *por* la Pascua.	*To receive the sacrament at Easter.*

The substantives here are governed in the *ablative* case.

Sobre, *above*, *upon*, *about*, *over*, *on*.—When this preposition denotes the *excess* or *superiority* of a person or thing, it governs the *accusative*; but when it is used to express *place*, *situation*, or *position*, it governs the *ablative*. Ex.—

El rey manda *sobre* todos.
The king commands above all.

No hay poder *sobre* el hado.
There is no power over fate.

La caridad es *sobre* todas las virtudes.
Charity is above all other virtues.

Londres, segun el censo hecho *sobre* el fin del año 1831, contiene *sobre* 212,000 casas, y 1,400,000 habitantes.
London, by the census taken about the end of the year 1831, *contained about* 212,000 *houses, and* 1,400,000 *inhabitants.*

Sobre, in these sentences, governs the *accusative*, because it is applied to denote *superiority* or *excess.*

El libro está *sobre* la mesa.
The book is on the table.

Una obra *sobre* economia politica.
A work upon political œconomy.

Cada estatua *sobre* su columna.
Each statue on its column.

No se hallará hombre semejante *sobre* la haz de la tierra.
A man like him will not be found upon earth.

Sobre, in these sentences, governs the *ablative* case, because it is used to express the *place* or the *end* of the subject.

Most of the Spanish adverbs are governed by prepositions, forming so vast a number of adverbial expressions, (which assume the place of prepositions,) that it would be almost impossible to enumerate them in a grammar; and as most of these expressions are similar to those used in English to express the same meaning, it would be quite useless to mention them, while those which form the Spanish idiom can be learned only by practice. The government of Spanish verbs and prepositions has been here explained, according to the syntax adopted by the Spanish Academy, and which is familiar to classical scholars; but as the dative and accusative cases, the most generally governed, do not in Spanish

differ in termination, and as the same prepositions are used for both, it is of little importance to the greater part of the learners of Spanish, whether the verb or the preposition governs the dative or the accusative case, provided the word thus governed occupies its proper place in the sentence, and is accompanied by its suitable preposition. These prepositions, in most cases, correspond literally with the same in English. Most of those which differ in both languages will be found at the end of this grammar in two tables, one for the verbs, and the other for the simple prepositions, to which the student may refer in case of doubt. The utility of these tables I hope will be acknowledged in the course of practice, and particularly for beginners in writing their exercises.

Themes on the Government of Prepositions.

Before you make your final choice, you ought to
hacer *resolucion* *deber*

examine its hazards, and converse with some of those
riesgo *conversar*

who are grown old in the company of themselves. I
envejecer

have just left the observatory of one of the most learned
acabar de dejar *sabio*

astronomers in the world, who has spent forty years in
mundo *pasar*

unwearied attention to the motions and appearances of
incansable *fase*

the celestial bodies. He admits a few friends once a
celestes *algunos amigos*

month to hear his deductions and enjoy his discoveries.
oir *ilacion* *gozar* *descubrimiento*

I was introduced as a man of knowledge, worthy of
erudicion *digno*

his notice. Men of various ideas and fluent conversation are commonly welcome to those whose thoughts
bienvenido *pensamiento*

have been long fixed upon a single point, and who find
fijar *solo* *punto* *hallar*
the images of other things stealing away. I delighted
imagen *escaparse* *deleitar*
him with my remarks; he smiled at the narrative of my
observacion *sonreirse*
travels, and was glad to forget the constellations, and
viajes *alegrarse* *olvidar*
descend for a moment into the lower world.

On the next day of vacation I renewed my visit, and was so fortunate as to please him again. He relaxed from that time the severity of his rule, and permitted me to enter at my own choice. I found him always busy, and always glad to be relieved. His comprehension is vast, and his integrity and benevolence are equal to his learning. His deepest researches and most favourite studies are willingly interrupted for any opportunity of doing good by his counsel or his riches.

We were sitting together last night in the turret of his house, watching the emersion of a satellite of Jupiter. A sudden tempest clouded the sky, and disappointed our observation. We sat awhile silent in the dark, and then he addressed himself to me in these words: "I have possessed for five years the regulation of the weather, and the distribution of the seasons; the sun has listened to my dictates, and passed from tropic to tropic by my direction; the clouds at my call have poured their waters, and the Nile has overflowed at my command. The winds alone, of all the elemental powers, have hitherto refused my authority, and multitudes have perished by equinoctial tempests, which I found myself unable to prohibit or restrain."

Meaning of words.—To renew, *renovar*; to relax, *aflojar*; choice, *voluntad*; to relieve, *aliviar*; to watch, *observar*; to cloud, *anublar*; to disappoint, *frustrar*; to sit, *estar sentado*; to address oneself, *dirijirse*; to listen, *escuchar*; to pour, *verter*; to overflow, *inundar*; to restrain, *impedir*.

Section III.

OF GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION.

The nature, inflections, concord, relations, government and dependence of words, with respect to each other, being explained, I shall now proceed to the proper arrangement of the various parts of speech to form a perfect sentence, according to the genius of the Spanish language, which is properly called *Grammatical Construction.* This arrangement is said to be *direct*, or *regular*, when each part of speech is placed in the sentence according to the unanimous practice of the best writers in each language. The construction of the words in Spanish is as follows:—

1. The substantive before the adjective, because the subject ought to be expressed before its attributes.

2. The verb after the nominative, because the subject ought to precede the action done or received by it.

3. The adverb immediately after the verb, because it modifies the action past, or present, or about to be effected.

4. The accusative, or object to which the action is directed, must be placed after the adverb.

5. Every word must be placed after that by which it is governed.

Such is the regular construction of sentences; but as a constant and strict adherence to this order would render the style monotonous and graceless, some alterations are allowed, to give energy and elegance to the expressions; and then the construction is called *indirect*, or *irregular*. The following example will show a striking difference between these two constructions.

"El premio y el castigo son convenientes en la guerra, asi como la justicia y la clemencia son convenientes en la paz."

All the words in the above sentence are strictly placed, according to the rules of the regular construction; but Saavedra, an elegant Spanish author, writes this sentence in an irregular construction:—

"Asi como son convenientes en la paz la justicia y la clemencia, son en la guerra el premio y el castigo."

The regular place of each word is here altered, the adverb standing at the beginning of the sentence, and the nominative at the end; the substantive after the adjective, and the verb before the subject: the expression, however, is thus rendered more graceful and elegant.

These deviations, authorized by constant use, are called *figures*, used, more or less, in all languages. Books on Rhetoric mention numerous sorts of these figures; but in a grammar, those only should be noticed which are of frequent use, in order that the learner may trace the true construction, and observe the reason for those variations from the established rules. The principal, or, more properly, the only figures used in the Spanish construction are five in number,—Hyperbaton, Pleonasm, Enallage, Ellipsis and Syllepsis.

Hyperbaton.

This word means an inversion of the natural order, or the transposition of a word to a place not assigned to it by the syntax; and this is the most frequent license practised in Spanish. It serves to call the attention, from the beginning, to the principal circumstance which the writer or speaker intends to express. Ex.—

"De tal suerte estuvieron cortadas las piedras para el templo de Salomon, que pudo levantarse sin ruido ni golpes de instrumentos."—Saavedra, *Empresas.*

"No siempre es feliz la prudencia, ni siempre infausta la temeridad."—*Idem.*

"No sufre compañeros el imperio, ni se puede dividir la magestad; porque es impracticable que cada uno de ellos mande y obedezca á un mismo tiempo, no pudiendose constituir una separada distincion de potestad y de casos."—*Idem.*

The principal intent of the writer in the above sentences is to express the great fitness of the stones, in the first sentence; the fallibility of caution, in the second; and the difficulty of dividing the regal power, in the third;

all which, in the natural order, could not be so strongly expressed.

Pleonasm.

Pleonasm is a superfluity of words, which, though incorrect in itself, adds force to the expression. National character, or hyperbolical dialect, has made this figure very frequent in Spanish discourse, particularly in the repetition of the pronouns; as has been observed at page 52. Ex.—*Ella se alaba á si misma*, she praises herself; where there are three pronouns for *self*.

Enallage.

This figure consists in changing one part of speech, or one tense of a verb, for another; and it is often used in Spanish. Ex.—*Su mucho gastar pronto le arruinará:* the verb *gastar*, to spend, is here used for a substantive. *Veo claro que vm. no me estima*;—here the adjective *claro* is used for the adverb *claramente*, clearly. *Vm. vendrá quizas fatigado*;—the future tense is here used for the present, *viene*, you come.

Ellipsis.

Ellipsis is the omission of words, which, if expressed, would sometimes divest the expression of its grace. Ex.—"Yo aceptaria las ofertas de Dario si fuera Alejandro." "Y yo tambien si fuera Parmenio." This repartee, without that brevity of expression caused by the omission of the verb, would lose much of its grace.

"Una hora de descuido en las fortalezas pierde la vigilancia y cuidado de muchos años. En pocos de ociosidad cayó el imperio Romano, sustentado con la fatiga y valor por seis siglos. Ocho costó de trabajos la restauracion de España, perdida en ocho meses de inadvertido descuido."—(Saavedra.) The word *años* is here omitted after *pocos*, in the second sentence, and again after *ocho* in the third.

Syllepsis.

This figure is used when we make the words agree according to the idea we have of them, and not according to the gender or number assigned to them; thus pro-

ducing a false concord. Ex.—*Su Beatitud está enfermo*; *su Alteza es muy docto*: in both instances a feminine substantive is made to agree with a masculine adjective. The same figure is used when a collective noun in the singular is made to agree with the verb in the plural, as has been observed at page 208.

SPANISH CONSTRUCTION.

It is the peculiar character of the Spanish language to be equally adapted to any construction, and of an easy transmission into other forms of speech. The Italian, among the modern tongues, is the most liberal in the inversion of the natural order prescribed by grammar,—so much so as to require great attention on the part of the reader to enter into the meaning of some of its writers,—while the French and the English observe scrupulously the simple grammatical order, without ever postponing the nominative or omitting the pronouns. But the Spanish, by holding a convenient medium, may be either strictly regular, or may abound in inversions and omissions; and yet all its transpositions appear so clear as seldom to cause any confusion in the sentence. In a familiar and plain style the Spanish construction may be rendered more like the English than any other modern language, notwithstanding the great dissimilarity in their orthography, and the difference in their origin. It is very common to meet in English authors,—particularly in those on history, as Hume, or in didactic works, as those of Blair,—with whole paragraphs, and even whole pages, which may be translated almost *verbatim* into good Spanish. It is also true that very few Spanish works may be rendered into English with the same facility; but this circumstance arises from what has just been said, that the English adheres more to the regular construction, while the Spanish may *ad libitum* either follow or invert that order, more or less, according to the subject of the discourse or the fancy of the writer.

The following extract from an abridgement of Dr. Blair's Rhetoric, with a collateral translation, will exhibit the similarity of regular construction in both languages.

Comparative Merit of the Ancients and the Moderns.

A very curious question has been agitated, with regard to the comparative perfection of the ancients and the moderns. In France this dispute was carried on with great heat, between Boileau and Madame Dacier for the ancients, and Perrault and La Motte for the moderns. Even at this day men of letters are divided on the subject; and it is somewhat difficult to discern, upon what grounds the controversy is to be determined.

To decry the ancient classics is a vain attempt. Their reputation is established upon too solid a foundation to be shaken. At the same time it is obvious that imperfections may be traced in their writings. But to discredit their works in general, can only belong to peevishness or prejudice. The approbation of the public, for so many centuries, establishes a verdict in their favour, from which there is no appeal.

In matters of mere reasoning the world may be long mistaken; and systems of philosophy have often a currency for a time, and then die. But in objects of taste there is no such fallibility; as they depend not on knowledge and science, but upon sentiment and feeling. Now the universal feeling of mankind must be right; and Homer and Virgil must continue to stand upon the same ground which they have occupied so long.

It is true, at the same time, that a blind veneration ought not to be paid to the ancients; and it is proper to institute a fair comparison between them and the moderns. If the ancients are allowed to have the preeminence in genius, it is observable, that the moderns cannot but have some advantage, in all arts of which the knowledge is progressive.

Hence in natural philosophy, astronomy, chemistry, and other sciences, which rest upon the observation of facts, it is undoubtedly certain, that the moderns have the superiority over the ancients. Perhaps, too, in precise reasoning, the philosophers of the modern ages have the advantage over those of ancient times; as a

Merito Comparativo de los Antiguos y los Modernos.

Una cuestion muy curiosa ha sido agitada, con respecto á la perfeccion comparativa de los antiguos y los modernos. En Francia esta disputa fue mantenida con gran ardor, entre Boileau y Madama Dacier por los antiguos, y Perrault y La Motte por los modernos. Aun en este dia los hombres de letras están divididos sobre el asunto; y es algo dificultoso discernir, sobre qué fundamentos la controversia *ha* de ser determinada.

Desacreditar á los clásicos antiguos es un vano intento. Su reputacion está establecida sobre un cimiento muy sólido para ser trastornada. Al mismo tiempo está claro que pueden *hallarse* imperfecciones en sus escritos. Pero desacreditar sus obras en general, puede solamente pertenecer á *la* petulancia ó preocupacion. La aprobacion del público, por tantos siglos, establece una decision en su favor, de la cual no hay apelacion.

En materias de mero razonar el mundo puede estar *largo tiempo* engañado; y *los* sistemas de filosofia tienen á menudo circulacion por un tiempo, y luego mueren. Pero en objetos de gusto no hay tal falibilidad; porque ellos dependen no *del* conocimiento y ciencia, sino *del* sentimiento y sensacion. Ahora *pues*, el sentimiento universal de *los* hombres debe ser justo; y Homero y Virgilio deben continuar á estar sobre el mismo lugar que han ocupado *tanto tiempo*.

Es verdad, al mismo tiempo, que una ciega veneracion no debe tributarse á los antiguos; y es propio instituir una justa comparacion entre ellos y los modernos. Si *á* los antiguos es permitido tener la preeminencia en genio, está claro, que los modernos no pueden sino tener alguna ventaja, en todas las artes *cuyo* conocimiento es progresivo.

Por esto, en filosofia natural, astronomia, química, y otras ciencias, que *se fundan* sobre la observacion de hechos, es indudablemente cierto que los modernos tienen la superioridad sobre los antiguos. Acaso tambien, en

more extensive literary intercourse has contributed to sharpen the faculties of men. Perhaps also the moderns have the superiority in history, as political knowledge is certainly more perfect now than of old, from the extension of commerce, the discovery of different countries, the superior facility of intercourse, and the multiplicity of events and revolutions which have taken place in the world. In poetry likewise some advantages have been gained on the side of regularity and accuracy. In dramatic performances, improvements have certainly been made upon the ancient models. The variety of the characters is greater; a greater skill has been displayed in the conduct of the plot; and a happier attention to probability and decorum. Among the ancients we find higher conceptions, greater originality, and a more fortunate simplicity. Among the moderns there is more art and more correctness, but a genius less forcible and striking. It is notwithstanding observable, that though this rule may be just in general, there are doubtless, exceptions from it. Thus it may be said that Milton and Shakespear are not inferior to any poet in any age.

Among the ancients there were many circumstances which were favourable to the exertions of genius. They travelled much in search of learning, and conversed with priests, poets, and philosophers. They returned home fired with the discoveries and acquisitions which they had made. Their enthusiasm was great; and there being few who were stimulated to excel as authors, the fame they procured was more intense and flattering. In modern times composition is less prized as an art. Everybody has pretensions to it. We write with less effort and more at ease. Printing has multiplied books so prodigally, that assistances are common and easy, and a mediocrity of genius prevails. To rise beyond this, and to pass beyond the crowd, is the happy preeminence of a chosen few.

With respect to epic poetry Homer and Virgil are still unrivalled; and modern times have produced no orator who can be compared with Demosthenes and

exacto raciocinio, los filosofos de los siglos modernos tienen la ventaja sobre aquellos de los tiempos antiguos; porque una comunicacion literaria mas extensiva ha contribuido á avivar las facultades de *los* hombres. Acaso quizas los modernos tienen la superioridad en *la* historia, porque *el* conocimiento politico está ciertamente mas perfecto ahora que *antiguamente*, por la extension de comercio, el descubrimiento de diferentes paises, la superior facilidad de trato, y la multiplicidad de eventos y revoluciones que han *ocurrido* en el mundo. En poesia igualmente algunas ventajas han sido ganadas *á favor* de *la* regularidad y exactitud. En composiciones dramáticas, *algunos* adelantamientos han sido *ciertamente* hechos sobre los antiguos modelos. La variedad de caracteres es mayor; una mayor habilidad ha sido desplegada en la conducta del enlace; y una atencion mas feliz á *la* probabilidad y decoro. Entre los antiguos hallamos conceptos mas elevados, mayor originalidad, y una simplicidad mas feliz. Entre los modernos hay mas arte y mas exactitud, pero un genio menos vigoroso y sorprendente. Es sin embargo evidente, que aunque esta regla sea justa en general, hay sin duda excepciones en ella. Asi puede *decirse*, que Milton y Shakespear no son inferiores á poeta alguno en ningun siglo.

Entre los antiguos habia muchas circunstancias que eran favorables á los esfuerzos del genio. Ellos viajaban mucho en busca de literatura, y conversaban con sacerdotes, poetas, y filósofos. Ellos volvian *á su pais* inflamados con los descubrimientos y adquisiciones que habian hecho. Su entusiasmo era grande; y habiendo pocos que fuesen estimulados á sobresalir como autores, la fama *que* ellos adquirian era mas intensa y lisonjera. En tiempos modernos la composicion está menos apreciada como arte. Cada uno tiene pretensiones á ella. Nosotros escribimos con menos esfuerzo y *con mas* facilidad. *La* imprenta ha multiplicado libros tan prodigamente, que *los* auxilios son comunes y fáciles, y una mediocridad de genio prevalece. Levantarse *sobre* esto, y *sobrepasar* la turba es la preeminencia feliz de *los* pocos escojidos.

Cicero. In history we have no modern narration that is so elegant, so picturesque, and so animated as those of Herodotus, Thucydides, Xenophon, Livy, Tacitus, and Sallust. Our dramas, with all the improvements they have received, are inferior in poetry and sentiment to those of Sophocles and Euripides. We have no comic dialogue so gracefully simple as that of Terence. Tibullus, Theocritus, and Horace have no counterparts in modern times. By those therefore who would improve their taste, and feed their genius, the utmost attention must be paid to the ancient classics, both Greek and Roman.

Spanish Comedy.

The earliest object in modern comedy is the Spanish theatre. The chief comedians of Spain are Lopez de Vega, Guillin, and Calderon. The first, who is the most famous of them, was the author of not less than a thousand plays; and was infinitely more irregular than our Shakespear. He disregarded, altogether, the three unities, and every established rule of dramatic composition. His dramas are chiefly historical; and are a mixture of heroic speeches, serious incidents, war, ridicule, and buffoonery. Notwithstanding his faults, he was in possession of genius, and of great force of imagination. Many of his characters are well painted; many of his situations are happy; and from the source of his rich invention, the dramatic writers of other nations have drawn many advantages. He was conscious himself of his extreme irregularities, and apologized for them, from the want of taste of his countrymen.

Note.—The student will perceive that the English and Spanish follow exactly the same construction throughout the above extracts, except some articles, which in the Spanish cannot be omitted, and a few words in *italics*, which I thought necessary to alter in the translation. The translation may certainly be rendered into more elegant Spanish, but as it is, may be considered perfectly correct language.

Con respecto á *la* poesia épica Homero y Virgilio están todavia sin rivales; y *los* tiempos modernos *no* han producido ningun orador que pueda ser comparado con Demóstenes y Ciceron. En historia no tenemos narracion moderna que *sea* tan elegante, tan pintoresca, y tan animada como aquellas de Herodoto, Tucidides, Jenofonte, Livio, Tácito, y Salustio. Nuestros dramas con todas las mejoras que han recibido, son inferiores en poesia y sentimiento á aquellos de Sófocles y Euripides. Nosotros no tenemos diálogo cómico tan graciosamente simple como *el* de Terencio. Tíbulo, Teócrito, y Horacio no tienen competidores en *los* tiempos modernos. Por tanto, aquellos que quieran mejorar su gusto, y alimentar su genio, deben prestar la mayor atencion á los clásicos antiguos asi Griegos como Romanos.

Comedia Española.

El mas antiguo objeto en la comedia moderna es el teatro Español. Los principales cómicos de España son Lope de Vega, Guillen, y Calderon. El primero, que es el mas famoso de ellos, fue el autor de no menos que mil comedias; y fué infinitamente mas irregular que nuestro Shakespear. El desatendia enteramente las tres unidades, y toda establecida regla de composicion dramática. Sus dramas son principalmente históricos; y son una mezcla de discursos heróicos, serios incidentes, guerra, ridículo, y bufoneria. No obstante sus faltas, poseia mucho genio, y grande fuerza de imaginacion. Muchos de sus caracteres están bien pintados; muchas de sus situaciones son felices; y de la fuente de su rica invencion, los escritores dramáticos de otras naciones han sacado muchas ventajas. El mismo conocia sus extremas irregularidades, y apologizaba por ellas, á causa de la falta de gusto de sus paisanos.

I shall now give a specimen of the freedom in the inversion of the natural order of construction of which the Spanish language is susceptible. It is an extract from Juan de Mena, a Spanish writer at the beginning of the fifteenth century, taken from the Preface to his work, "La Coronacion."

"Y yo Juan de Mena, exiguo é ínfimo en la suerte del repartimiento del dañado numine, es á saber, de la ciega fortuna, con ojo atento y razonable consideracion, creí esta palabra poderse decir, y aun decir del prudentisimo, magnanimo é ingente caballero Iñigo Lopez de Mendoza. A la fama del qual muchos estrangeros que en España no habian causa de pasar, hayan por huespedes sufrido venir en la Castellana region, no es á nosotros nuevo. La qual volante fama con alas de ligereza que son gloria de buenas nuevas, ha encabalgado los Gálicos Alpes, y discurrido hasta la Frigiada tierra, y no quiere cesar ni cesa de volar hasta pasar el Caucaso Monte; allende del cual la fama del Romano Pueblo se halla no traspasase; segun en el de Consolacion Boecio. Pues como podrá conmigo mas la pereza que no la gloria del dulce trabajo? y por qué no posponer por esta las cosas otras, es á saber, por colaudar, recontar y escribir la gloria del tanto Señor como aqueste, quanto mas esforzadamente en aquella palabra de Seneca que el escribe en una de las epistolas por él á Luzilo enderezadas. *Seipsum glorificat qui laudatum laudat*: quiso decir, Asimismo glorifica y da gloria el que al alabado alaba; es á saber, al que merece serlo."

Such was the style of an author more than four hundred years ago, who closely followed the Latin construction, which he thought could easily be adopted in the Castilian language, on account of its great similarity to that of ancient Rome. But the freedom of construction in the style of Mena, in the extract just given, has not been followed. The great writers in the Castilian language since the sixteenth century have adopted clearness as the first quality, fluency as the second, and harmonious cadence as the last requisite of an elegant diction.

The similarity of the Spanish to the Latin appears more evident from the attempt of certain writers to compose some tracts, both in prose and verse, in which every word is equally Latin and Spanish. As a specimen of this sort of Hispano-Latin dialect, I shall introduce here a letter addressed to Prince Don Juan de Austria, son of the great Charles V., by the learned Ambrosio Morales.

EPISTOLA.

Serenissima Excellencia.

Si de paterno exemplo (ó inclyta potencia de Austria) te incitares, de Cesareo animo te armas: si de fraterna memoria te provocares, de suprema gloria te sublimas. Quando feroces insolencias rigurosamente domando, perversas furias castigas, quan altas victorias procuras, quan celebres triumphos adornas, quan gloriosas coronas esperas! Si tu, Austria clemencia, dando junctamente benignos favores, de refugio personas tristes sustentares, quan excellentes fabricas fundas, quan insignes fundaciones fabricas! O quan singulares invenciones intentas, quando juveniles fervores, excessivos impetus refrenando, espiritus ociosos evitando, latinas musas amas, solicitas, frequentas! Amas, aspiras, inflamas te, ardes, latinas inteligencias, composiciones elegantes de prosa i de metro gustando? Altas imaginaciones provocas, heroycos amores intentas, generosos fines consideras. Dulces eloquencias latinas esperas? Differentes coronas contemplando, ardores animosos incitas, altas sciencias comprehendiendo, suavissimos amores procuras. Grandes materias (Austria gloriosa) sublimas, quando tales affecciones de animo studioso representas. Quales sciencias amas? Quales opiniones sustentas? Quales artes procuras quando tales amores te inflaman? Fatigote inquiriendo? Inquietote importunamente clamando? Si excedo, tu (serenissima excellencia) responde blandamente. De arte clara procediendo, ignorantes errores evita. Respondes sentencias graves, satisfacciones opportunas manifestando. Subtiles inven-

ciones trato, resoluciones graves comprehendo, libros perfectos amo. Prudentissimamente respondes. Elige tu (Austria inclyta) libros excellentes, si tan altos fines estimas: si tales invenciones intentas, si tales prosequuciones prolongas divinos favores invoca. Tu invocando, nos junctamente rogando. O tu divina Omnipotencia, sempiterna providencia, gloria infinita; tu que misericordias benignissimas sustentas, tu que favores dulcissimos prestas, das perfecciones dignas, humanos animos sublimando: tu infunde doctas affecciones, conserva sapientissimos amores de Austria inclyta procedentes, de ingenio clarissimo manantes. Accumula honestas prosequuciones, errores latinos evitando, libros convenientes monstrando, latinas musas inclinando, romanas oraciones abundantemente representa. Vale.

It should be observed that the orthography in this letter was used in Spanish in former times, and that now and then a letter is occasionally altered to preserve the word purely Spanish; as, for instance, *quan* for *quam*, because no word in Spanish can end in *m*; the substitution of *c* for *t* in *potencia*, *invenciones*, &c., because the letter *t* has in Spanish but one sound; and that the Spanish termination *mente* is given to the adverbs. As for the merit of the composition, the Latin scholar will judge for himself: the reason for its insertion here is only to confirm what has often been stated in this grammar, that the Spanish language possesses more analogy to the Latin than any other language derived from it.

Having shown how susceptible the Spanish language is of various constructions, I recommend the student to follow, in his first translations and compositions, the most regular construction, (this being always good Spanish,) till his knowledge of the language shall enable him to invert more or less the parts of the sentence. He should select an English book of narrative, as history or travels, and translate some portions of it, bearing in mind the following observations, in which the whole Syntax given in this Grammar is comprehended.

OBSERVANDA

FOR LEARNERS OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE IN THEIR FIRST EXERCISES.

1. The concord of substantives with adjectives in number and gender.

2. Let the adjective generally follow the substantive; and every noun, when in the nominative, must be preceded by the corresponding article.

3. If the personal pronoun is the nominative of the phrase, it is the practice to omit it.

4. If two personal pronouns should occur after an English verb, refer to page 48 for the corresponding construction in Spanish.

5. The concord of the verb with the nominative, according to the number and person of the latter.

6. If there are two phrases in the sentence united by a conjunction, the verb in the subjunctive mood ought to be in the same tense as that of the verb in the indicative.

7. The conditional tense is the only one in the subjunctive mood which does not require a conjunction.

8. Observe if any verbs are irregular, and in what their irregularity consists.

9. The adverb should constantly follow the verb, and never come between the auxiliary and the participle.

10. When the English verb is in the preterite, observe whether it corresponds to the Spanish imperfect, or the perfect.

11. The difference between SER and ESTAR, *to be*.

12. If there is a gerund in English, with a preposition before it, either use the corresponding gerund in Spanish, omitting the preposition, or put the preposition before the infinitive of the verb.

13. In the passive expressions, which are so frequent in the English language, observe, by the rule at page 109, whether they ought to be rendered passively in Spanish by means of an auxiliary verb, or by the personal pronoun *se*. The latter construction is most congenial to the Spanish language.

CHAPTER XIII.

IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.

It is a general idea that the dialogues usually annexed to grammars enable learners to speak the language they wish to acquire; but whoever will examine this supposition will find that it is not correct. There is not an expression in any dialogue (except a few idioms,) that is not construed in various modes, and with different words by different speakers; and it is very unusual for its application to the same circumstances to occur. Moreover, if the student learns by heart the expressions he finds there, he will naturally suppose that other persons must use them likewise, which not being the case, he will find himself embarrassed in his answers. Committing a dialogue to memory is therefore objectionable; and the surest method for a learner to enable himself to converse in a foreign language is to form and produce the sentences as he conceives them in his mind. There are, however, some idioms in every language the knowledge of which, as they are generally used both in conversation and in epistolary correspondence, is absolutely necessary to a foreigner, since no other expression can easily be substituted without the appearance of uncouthness. The following expressions are the most usual idioms of the Spanish language.

In Conversation.—The day is divided by Spaniards into—*mañana*, morning, which ends at twelve o'clock; *tarde*, evening, which extends from noon to the beginning of the night; and *noche*, night, which comprehends from the end of the evening twilight to the first light of the morning. *Madrugada*, the dawn, is a very familiar word with Spaniards, and so likewise is *siesta*, noon, which extends from one or two till three or four o'clock in the afternoon, and is generally understood for the time immediately after dinner, in which case it is synonymous with a short sleep or nap. *Mediodia* and *medianoche* are taken almost in the same sense as 'mid-

day' and 'midnight' in English, not precisely for twelve o'clock, but for the interval between twelve and two o'clock.

The time of the day is expressed in Spanish with the word *hora*, hour, which is always used in asking the time, but understood in the answer. Ex.—*Qué hora es?* what o'clock is it? And the answer is made according to the following expressions, for the several periods of time:—

va á dar la una,	*it is very near one o'clock.*
es la una en punto,	*it is exactly one.*
la una y cuarto,	*a quarter after one.*
la una y media,	*half-past one.*
las dos menos cuarto,	*a quarter to two.*
las dos,	*two o'clock.*
acaban de dar las tres,	*it struck three just now.*
estan dando las cuatro,	*it is striking four.*

The state of the weather is expressed in Spanish by the impersonal verb *hacer*; as, *hace ó buen mal tiempo*, it is fine *or* bad weather; *hace frio*, it is cold; *hace calor*, it is hot; *hace mucho viento*, it is very windy, &c.

In addressing or naming absent persons, two compellations are used in Spanish, *Don* or *Doña*, and *Señor* or *Señora*. The first is used with Christian names; as, *Don Juan, Don Carlos, Doña Maria, Doña Isabel*; and the latter with family names; as, *Señor Alvares, Señor Garcia, Señora Flores, Señora Peres*. But in speaking of persons of high rank, both compellations are used, which precede the Christian and patronymic name; as, *el Señor Don Bernardino de Velasco, Duque de Frias*; *la Señora Doña Josefa Caro, Marquesa de la Romana*, &c. It should be observed that Spanish ladies do not lose their family names by marriage: their maiden names are preserved to them in all addresses, and more particularly in legal documents, such as certificates of marriage, registers of baptism, wills, &c.

The usual titles of honour in Spanish are *Majestad*, Majesty, for the sovereign; *Alteza*, Highness, for the king's son and heir to his crown, the only prince in the

royal family: all the other sons are called *Infantes*, and the daughters *Infantas*; their title of honour is *Excelencia*, and they are simply called Don Carlos, Don Miguel, Doña Luisa, Doña Francisca. All the Grandees, which is the highest dignity in Spain, whether Dukes, Marquises, or Counts, have *Excelencia*; and the same compellation is given to all the Grand Crosses, principal Ministers of State, Ambassadors, Captains and Lieutenant-Generals, Admirals and Vice-Admirals. Archbishops and Bishops, and a few other high dignitaries, both in the Church and in the Court, have the compellation of *Ilustrisima*. The compellation of *Señoria*, generally contracted into *Usia*, is given to all other titles, as Marquises or Counts, having no other superior title on account of higher knighthood or chief command. And the same address is used to Mayors and Brigadier-Generals, Rear-Admirals, and to Colonels and Post-Captains by their subalterns, and also to Deans and other dignitaries in cathedral churches.

The student will recollect what has been said at page 53 about the pronouns, used both in familiar and polite address among Spaniards; and as he is not supposed to be in the circumstances in which he would use the familiar style, it ought to be settled here as a general rule, that persons should address themselves in the third person singular both of the pronoun and the verb. The pronoun used is *usted* for the singular, and *ustedes* for the plural, which always correspond to the English *you*; and when *usted* is omitted, the pronoun *su* for the singular, and *sus* for the plural, is used instead, and this pronoun always corresponds to the English *your*. *Vuestro* is not to be used in Spanish in conversation, but only in addressing the discourse to God, or to the Sovereign; as, *vuestra majestad, de vuestra majestad*, &c.

The first salute among persons is *Buenos dias*, from the morning to three or four o'clock in the afternoon; from this time till dark it is *Buenas tardes*; and during the whole night *Buenas noches*, both on entering into company and on taking leave; and the usual answer is, for *dias*, *Buenos se los dé Dios á vm.*; and for *tardes* or

noches, *Buenas se las dé Dios á vm.*, 'I wish you the same.' The singularity in these expressions is the use of *dia* morning, *tarde* evening, and *noche* night, in the plural.

The first inquiry after health generally is *Como está vm.?* if addressing one, or *Como están vms.?* if addressing in the plural, which corresponds to the English *How do you do?* and is, literally, *How are you?* And the usual answers are according to circumstances; as, *Bueno, para servir á vm.*, 'very well, at your service'; *mucho mejor*, 'much better'; *lo mismo que antes*, 'as before'; *así así*, 'so so.' There are many other expressions for the same purpose; as, *Como se halla vm. hoy?* 'how are you today?' (but this expression supposes previous indisposition;) or, *Como lo pasa?* or, *Como le vá?* (these two expressions, however, imply some familiarity.)

The expressions *I am very glad*, or *I am very sorry*, so frequent in conversation, must be rendered in Spanish by the verb *alegrarse* for the former, and *sentir* for the latter, in all their tenses; as, I am very glad, *me alegro mucho*; he will be very glad, *se alegrará muchisimo*; I am very sorry, *siento mucho*; she will be extremely sorry, *ella sentirá en extremo*, &c.

If, in the course of conversation, there should be occasion to thank a person, the usual phrase is, *Viva vm. muchos años*, 'I am very much obliged to you'; or, *Le doy á vm. las gracias*, 'I thank you;' or, more concisely, *Muchas gracias.*

Should there be occasion to recommend oneself to a person absent, the usual expressions, both in conversation and in writing, are, *Dé vm. muchas expresiones de mi parte á* ——, 'give my respects to ——;' or, *Muchas memorias á* ——, 'remember me to ——;' to which the answer is obvious; *Lo haré con mucho gusto*, 'I will do it with great pleasure;' or, *Le agradecerá mucho su memoria*, 'he or she will be much obliged to you for your civilities.'

In taking leave, the usual expressions are, *Señor, á la obediencia de vm.*, 'Sir, your most obedient;' *Señora, á los pies de vm.*, 'Madam, your most humble servant';

the answer to which is literally the same as in English, 'I am your servant,' *Servidor de vm.*, or *Servidora de vm. Beso las manos de vm.*, 'I kiss your hands,' was formerly much used both in conversation and in writing, but is now confined to the conclusion of mercantile letters. Among friends, the usual expression on retiring from each other is, *Quédese vm. con Dios*, 'good-bye;' and the answer is, *Vaya vm. con Dios*, 'good bye to you;' or, *Que vm. lo pase bien*, 'farewell;' and when there is intimacy, a mutual *Adios* is the final leave.

With the exception of these few idiomatical phrases, the English learner may enter into Spanish conversation, sit at table among Spaniards, desire to go to bed, to rise early or late, to ride or to walk, speak to his tailor or consult his physician in Spanish, (without reading dialogues on those subjects,) by using the same phraseology as he would use in English.

In Epistolary Correspondence.—Epistolary correspondence is framed according to the circumstances of persons or the importance of the subjects.

Official notes among ministers are written very much alike by the representatives of all nations; and the only difference observed in Spanish documents is, that they generally conclude with *Dios guarde á vm.* (or *V. E.*) *muchos años*, May God preserve you (*or* V. E.) for many years.

Mercantile letters, at this time of universal commerce, differ very little in their form; and merchants of all countries are rapidly assimilating their correspondence. There are, however, a few expressions peculiar to the Spanish, and still retained in commercial letters. The form of address in these letters on business is the same in both languages; except that the Spanish resists the dry manner used among English merchants, *Sir*, or *Gentlemen*; and the following expressions must be used in Spanish: *Muy Señor mio* or *Muy Señores nuestros.* And at the end Spanish merchants generally conclude with *B. L. M. de vm.*, which are the initial letters of *Beso las manos de vm.*, I *or* we kiss your hands. Some

conclude with *S. S. S.*, the initials of *Su seguro servidor*, your faithful servant. Others add both forms, and write *S. S. Servidor Q. S. M. B.*, which means *Su seguro servidor que sus manos besa.* These few observations will be sufficient for a casual reader of a mercantile letter; as for clerks, they have not to acquire the knowledge necessary for them in a grammar, but in the counting-house.

Friendly correspondence in Spanish, both in letters and notes, as it regards style, has no difference whatever from the English. The date and the signature have respectively the same positions; and the language adopted at the conclusion is the same, according to the circumstances of the writer and of the person addressed. The same may be said with respect to folding, sealing, envelop and superscription.

Notes of Inquiry and Invitation.—In a country like Spain,—where friends visit each other almost daily, where the inhabitants of each principal town reside there constantly, and Madrid, the residence of the Court, being comparatively small with respect to the immensity of London and Paris,—it may be supposed that notes of ceremony, conveying civil inquiries or compliments, are not so necessary as in England or France. There are, however, some families who send these notes, which in substance do not differ from those of other countries. Invitations to private parties are mostly made verbally or by message, and when made by writing, they generally are in a very friendly style, containing some facetious expression, which ensures the attendance of the invited. As this style depends on the wit of the writer, and on the intimacy of persons, no rules can be given for it, except that the third person of the verb is always used, and the personal pronoun omitted, unless a great ambiguity would require its expression.

LIST

OF SPANISH VERBS WHICH REQUIRE PREPOSITIONS DIFFERENT FROM THOSE IN ENGLISH.

Abochornarse *de* algo, *to blush at anything.*
aborrecido *de* todos, *detested by all.*
abrasarse *en* deseos, *to be inflamed with desires.*
abrazarse *con* la cruz, *to embrace the cross.*
abrirse *con* sus amigos, *to unbosom oneself to one's friends.*
abundar *en* riquezas, *to abound with riches.*
aburrido *de las* desgracias, *weary of misfortunes.*
abusar *de la* amistad, *to abuse friendship.*
acabar *de* venir, *to be just come.*
acalorarse *con* la disputa, *to grow warm in a dispute.*
acerca *de* este asunto, *about this business.*
acercarse *á* alguno, *to draw nigh to any one.*
acertar *con* la casa, *to find the house.*
aconsejarse *con* sabios, *to be advised by wise men.*
acordarse *de* alguno, } *to remember any one or any*
ó *de* alguna cosa, } *thing.*
acreedor *á* la confianza, *worthy of confidence.*
acusar *á* alguno *de* robo, *to accuse any one of theft.*
adelantarse *á* otros, *to excel others.*
adolecer *de* alguna enfermedad, *to be afflicted with any disease.*
aficionarse *á* or *de* alguna cosa, *to take an affection for anything.*
afirmarse *en* su dicho, *to confirm what one said.*
afrentarse *de* ser pobre, *to be ashamed of being poor.*
ageno *de* la verdad, *foreign to the truth.*
agradecido *á* los beneficios, *grateful for benefits.*
agraviarse *de* alguno, *to be affronted with any one.*
ahitarse *de* manjares, *to surfeit oneself with food.*
ahogarse *de* calor, *to be suffocated with heat.*
ahorrarse *de* razones, *to cut off short.*
alegrarse *de* algo, *to be rejoiced at anything.*
alimentarse *de* or *con* yerbas, *to live upon herbs.*
alimentarse *de* esperanzas, *to feed oneself with hopes.*

alindar una cosa *con* otra, *to be contiguous to one another.*
amañarse *á* escribir, *to make oneself clever in writing.*
amenazar *á* alguno, *to threaten any one.*
ampararse *de* alguno, *to put oneself under the patronage of any one.*
analogo *á* lo que se dice, *analogous to what is told.*
ancho *de* boca, *with a wide mouth.*
andar *á* gatas, *to go on all fours.*
anhelar *por* riquezas, *to sigh after riches.*
animar *á* las tropas, *to cheer the troops.*
anticiparse *á* otro, *to anticipate any one.*
apercibirse *de* armas, *to provide oneself with arms.*
apetecido *de* todos, *desired by every one.*
apiadarse *de* los pobres, *to have compassion on the poor.*
apropincuarse *á* alguno, *to draw near to any one.*
aprovecharse *de* la ocasion, *to profit by the opportunity.*
apurado *de* medios, *reduced to straights.*
arder *en* amores, *to burn with love.*
armarse *de* paciencia, *to arm oneself with patience.*
arrecirse *de* frio, *to be benumbed with cold.*
arriesgarse *á* empresas peligrosas, *to venture upon dangerous enterprizes.*
arrimarse *á* la pared, *to lean against the wall.*
asistir *á* los enfermos, *to nurse sick persons.*
asombrarse *de* alguna cosa, *to wonder at anything.*
atento *con* sus mayores, *respectful to one's betters.*
atinar *con* la casa, *to find out the house.*
atreverse *á* cosas grandes, *to be bold enough to undertake great things.*
atribularse *en* los trabajos, *to be afflicted with pains.*
atufarse *de* poco, *to be affronted at a trifle.*
aventajarse *á* otros, *to excel others.*
Balancear *á* una parte, *to lean to one side.*
bambolear *en* la maroma, *to swing upon a rope.*
barar *en* tierra, *to run aground.*
bastardear *en* sus acciones, *to debase himself by his actions.*
bajo *de* cuerpo, *short in stature.*
beber *en* un jarro, *to drink out of a jug.*

beber *al* fiado, *to drink upon trust.*
blando *de* corteza, *easy to be deceived.*
blasfemar *de* la virtud, *to blaspheme against virtue.*
bostezar *de* hambre, *to gape from hunger.*
boyante *en* la fortuna, *having good luck.*
bramar *de* corage, *to roar with rage.*
bramar *contra* uno, *to scold any one.*
brincar *de* gozo, *to leap for joy.*
bueno *de* comer, *good to eat.*
bufar *de* ira, *to swell with anger.*
burlarse *de* alguno, *to jest at one.*
Caer *de* pies, *to alight upon one's feet.*
caer *en* la cuenta, *to correct one's mistake.*
caer *en* tierra, *to fall upon the ground.*
caer *en* lo que se dice, *to understand what is said.*
caer *en* la tentacion, *to yield to temptation.*
caer *por* la Pascua, *to happen about Easter.*
calarse *de* agua, *to be imbibed with water.*
calentarse *al* fuego, *to warm oneself at the fire.*
calificar *á* uno *de* docto, *to qualify one for a learned man.*
callar la verdad *á* otro, *to conceal the truth from another.*
callar *de* miedo, *to keep silence for fear.*
caminar *á* pie, *to go on foot.*
carcomerse *de* aburrimiento, *to pine away for vexation.*
cargar *á* uno *de* injurias, *to rail at any one.*
causar perjuicio *á* alguno, *to prejudice any one.*
ceñirse *á* lo posible, *to keep within bounds.*
cojer la palabra *á* alguno, *to take one at his word.*
colmar *á* alguno *de* beneficios, *to heap benefits upon any one.*
comerse *de* envidia, *to waste with jealousy.*
compadecerse *de* los males agenos, *to commiserate the woes of others.*
compensar una cosa *con* otra, *to compensate one thing by another.*
complacerse *de* alguna cosa, *to be pleased with anything.*
comprometer *en* arbitros, *to compromise by arbitration.*

concebir alguna cosa *de* tal modo, *to understand a thing in such a manner.*
concebir una cosa *por* buena, *to look upon a thing as good.*
concertar una cosa *con* otra, *to adjust one thing to another.*
conferir honores *á* alguno, *to bestow honours on any one.*
confesarse *con* alguno, *to confess oneself to any one.*
confesarse *de* sus pecados, *to confess one's sins.*
confiar una cosa *á* una persona, *to intrust a person with anything.*
confinar un pais *con* otro, *to border upon another country.*
conformarse *con* el tiempo, *to conform oneself to the time.*
confundirse *de* lo que se vé, *to be confounded with what one sees.*
conmutar una cosa *con* otra, *to exchange one thing for another.*
contravenir *á* la ley, *to transgress the law.*
conversar *en* materias de estado, *to talk of state affairs.*
correr *por* las calles, *to go up and down the streets.*
correrse *de* verguenza, *to blush.*
corresponder *á* los beneficios, *to be grateful for benefits.*
cubrir *de* misterio, *to envelop in mystery.*
cubrirse *de* sudor, *to be all in a perspiration.*
cumplir *con* su obligacion, *to fulfil one's duty.*
curtido *del* sol, *burnt by the sun.*
curtido *en* trabajos, *accustomed to griefs.*
Dar *en* manias, *to have fancies.*
darse *por* vencido, *to yield.*
defender *á* uno *de* sus contrarios, *to defend any one against his enemies.*
defraudar algo *de* la autoridad de otro, *to encroach upon another's authority.*
deleitarse *en* oir, *to please oneself with hearing.*
depender *de* alguno, *to depend upon any one.*
desabrocharse *con* su amigo, *to unbosom oneself to one's friend.*
desazonarse *con* alguno, *to be in a pet with any one.*

descararse *con* alguno *to speak impudently to any one.*
descollarse *sobre* otros, *to excel others.*
descubrirse *con* alguno, *to make oneself known to any one.*
descuidar *en* alguno, *to rely upon one.*
deshacerse *en* llanto, *to cry bitterly.*
despertar *á* alguno, *to awake any one.*
Echar algo *á* tierra, *to throw anything on the ground.*
encenderse *en* ira, *to kindle with anger.*
engastar *de* diamantes, *to stud with diamonds.*
esculpir *en* bronce, *to engrave upon brass.*
espantarse *de* algo, *to be terrified at anything.*
estar cerca *de* la ruina, *to border on destruction.*
estar *de* viaje, *to be on a journey.*
estar *para* salir, *to be ready to set out.*
estar *por* alguno, *to side with any one.*
estar *por* suceder, *to be going to arrive.*
estremecerse *de* algo, *to shudder at anything.*
excederse *á* si mismo, *to outdo oneself.*
excusarse *con* alguno, *to excuse oneself to any one.*
Facil *de* dijerir, *easy to digest.*
faltar *á* la palabra, *not to keep one's word.*
fatigarse *de* alguna cosa, *to be fatigued by anything.*
fecundo *en* promesas, *lavish of promises.*
fiarse *de* alguno, *to trust to any one.*
formalizarse *por* una friolera, *to take exception at a trifle.*
Gozarse *de* alguna cosa, *to rejoice at anything.*
graduar una cosa *por* buena, *to look upon a thing as good.*
guardarse *de* alguno, *to distrust any one.*
Haber *á* las manos, *to have at hand.*
hablar *al* aire, *to talk to the air.*
hacer *de* valiente, *to boast of courage.*
hartarse *de* comida, *to gorge oneself with food.*
helarse *de* frio, *to be frozen with cold.*
hervir *en* insectos, *to swarm with vermin.*
hincarse *de* rodillas, *to kneel down.*
holgarse *de* alguna cosa, *to rejoice at anything.*
impelido *de* la necesidad, *impelled by necessity.*
inapeable *de* su opinion, *steady in one's opinion.*

incansable *en* el trabajo, *unwearied with labour.*
infecto *de* heregia, *infected with heresy.*
inficionado *de* peste, *infected with the plague.*
ingrato *con* los amigos, *ungrateful to friends.*
interceder *por* otro, *to speak in behalf of another.*
introducirse *con* los que mandan, *to introduce oneself to the commanders.*
inundar (el reino) *de* libelos, *to pester (the kingdom) with libels.*
irritarse *por* poco, *to be angry at a trifle.*
Jurar *contra* alguno, *to swear at any person.*
Lastimarse *de* alguno, *to take pity on any one.*
leer (los pensamientos) *á* alguno, *to read the thoughts of any one.*
llenar la bolsa *de* dinero, *to fill the purse with money.*
llevarse *de* alguna pasion, *to give oneself up to any passion.*
ludir una cosa *con* otro, *to rub one thing against another.*
Mantenerse *con* vegetales, *to live upon vegetables.*
meterse *á* gobernar, *to meddle in governing.*
mirar *con* ceño *á* alguno, *to frown at any one.*
mirar *de* lejos, *to look at a distance.*
misericordioso *con* los pobres, *merciful to the poor.*
molestar *á* uno *con* visitas, *to weary any one with visits.*
montar *á* caballo, *to get on horseback.*
montar *en* colera, *to fly into a passion.*
morirse *de* frio, *to be starved with cold.*
motejar *á* alguno *de* ignorante, *to banter any one for his ignorance.*
mudar *de* intento, *to altar one's mind.*
murmurar *de* alguno, *to murmur against any one.*
Negligente *en* sus propios negocios, *negligent of one's own affairs.*
Oir *de* confesion, *to hear in confession.*
olvidarse *de* lo pasado, *to forget the past.*
optar *á* los empleos, *to enter upon employment.*
Pagarse *de* buenas razones, *to be satisfied with good reasons.*
parecerse *á* otro, *to be like another.*

parecerse *de* rostro, *to be like in the face.*
pasar *de* largo, *to go on.*
pasmarse *de* alguna cosa, *to wonder much at anything.*
patear *de* despecho, *to stamp for vexation.*
pecar *de* ignorante, *to sin through ignorance.*
pender *de* alguna cosa, *to depend on anything.*
pendiente *de* un hilo, *suspended by a thread.*
penetrado *de* dolor, *penetrated with grief.*
perecer *de* hambre, *to die with hunger.*
peregrinar *por* el mundo, *to wander over the world.*
permutar una cosa *por* otra, *to change one thing for another.*
perseguido *de* enemigos, *pursued by enemies.*
picarse *de* alguna cosa, *to be offended at anything.*
poblar *de* arboles, *to plant with trees.*
poseido *de* temor, *possessed by fear.*
postrado *de* la enfermedad, *enfeebled by illness.*
precedido *de* otro, *preceded by another.*
preferido *de* alguno, *preferred by any one.*
preguntar *á* alguno, *to ask any one.*
prendarse *de* alguno, *to become attached to any one.*
proclamar *á* alguno *por* rey, *to proclaim any one king.*
provechoso *á* la salud, *good for the health.*
proveer una plaza *de* viveres, *to provision a fortress.*
Quedar *de* asiento, *to remain, to reside.*
quedar *de* pies, *to remain standing.*
quitarse *de* quimeras, *to avoid disputes.*
Rabiar *de* hambre, *to rage with hunger.*
rabiar *por* alguna cosa, *to be eager after anything.*
rebosar *de* gozo, *to be overjoyed.*
recibir *á* cuenta, *to receive on account.*
recibirse *de* abogado, *to become a barrister.*
redundar *en* beneficio, *to turn to profit.*
regañar *de* cualquier cosa, *to grumble at anything.*
reirse *á* carcajadas, *to break out into laughter.*
reventar *de* risa, *to burst with laughter.*
reventar *por* hablar, *to burst with desire to speak.*
revestirse *de* su autoridad, *to be proud of one's authority.*
romper *por* alguna parte, *to break into any place.*

Saber *á* vino, *to smell of wine.*
saber *de* trabajos, *to be acquainted with sorrows.*
saber *de* coro, *to know by heart.*
salirse *con* la suya, *to get what one desires.*
salir *por* fiador, *to be security.*
saltar *de* gozo, *to leap for joy.*
sentirse *de* algo, *to resent anything.*
sitiado *de* enemigos, *besieged by enemies.*
sospechoso *á* todos, *suspected by all.*
subir *de* precio, *to grow dearer.*
suplicar *á* alguno hacer alguna cosa, *to beg of any one to do something.*
suspirar *por* el mando, *to sigh after command.*
sustentarse *con* pan y agua, *to live upon bread and water.*
Temblar *de* miedo, *to tremble with fear.*
temido *de* todos, *feared by all.*
tiritar *de* frio, *to tremble with cold.*
tocado *de* enfermedad, *afflicted with a disease.*
torcido *de* cuerpo, *crooked in body.*
traspasado *de* dolor, *penetrated with grief.*
tratar *de* alguna cosa, *to discourse upon something.*
triunfar *de* los enemigos, *to triumph over enemies.*
Vanagloriarse *de* su merito, *to presume upon one's merit.*
vecino *al* trono, *near the throne.*
vencido *de* los contrarios, *vanquished by enemies.*
vivir *de* limosna, *to live upon alms.*

The preceding list comprehends only those Spanish verbs of the most common occurrence, and which are generally used with different prepositions from those required by the same verbs in English. The Spanish idioms are so numerous that it is not possible to enumerate them in a grammar: and as a great number of them are in the Spanish dictionaries under the verbs *Andar*, *Dar*, *Estar*, *Hablar*, *Hacer*, *Ir*, *Tener*, and others, the student is recommended to look out those words, and to extract such idiomatical phrases as he may think proper to commit to memory.

A Table of the most frequent Prepositions, exemplified in short Sentences, and which sometimes are differently applied in both Languages.

[The English part is placed first, in order that students may learn more readily how to render the English prepositions with accuracy into Spanish.]

About, *Cerca.*

The towns about London, los pueblos junto á Londres.
about break of day, al romper el dia.
about forty pounds, cerca de cuarenta libras.
the stir was about this, el alboroto era sobre esto.
to go about a thing, ponerse á hacer algo.
I came about this matter, vine sobre este asunto.
sir, look about you, señor, no se descuide vm.
she is near the child, ella está junto al niño.
they passed the bottle about, pasaban la botella al rededor.
all about my house, todo al rededor de mi casa.
I have been ten miles about, he dado una vuelta de diez millas.
I have been a long way about, di una grande vuelta.
have you any money about you? tiene vm. algun dinero conmigo?
I am about to remove, estoi para mudar de casa.
being about to say that, estando para decir eso.
I shall bring that matter about, terminaré ese negocio.
before matters are brought about, antes que se efectue todo.

After, *Despues.*

the day after, el dia siguiente.
not long after, poco tiempo despues.
after his death, despues de su muerte.
after the same manner, de la misma manera.
call him after his proper name, llamele por su propio nombre.
after the French fashion, á la Francesa.

next after that, el immediato á ese.
next after his daughter he loved his niece most, despues de á su hija, amaba á la sobrina mas que á todos.
they thirst after your riches, codician mucho sus riquezas.
after we were seated, despues que nos sentamos.
after I showed him all that, despues que le mostré todo eso.

At, *En.*

at London, at home, en Londres, en casa.
at my friend's house, en casa de mi amigo.
at this very season, á esta misma sazon.
at what hour? ¿á qué hora?
at so great a distance, á una distancia tan grande.
to buy at second hand, comprar de segunda mano.
to be at leisure, estar desocupado.
at a great expense, á mucho costo.
at a small charge, á un costo pequeño.
at hand, á la mano.
at the door, á la puerte.
at my sister's entreaty, por la súplica de mi hermana.
at my order, á mi orden.
we are deservedly laughed at, se rien de nosotros con razon.
I am at the pains and expense, pongo mi tiempo y mi dinero.
do you take him at his word? ¿se atiene vm. á su palabra?
at one blow, de un solo golpe.
they are at variance, estan reñidos.
to be at an end, estar acabado.
to be at work, at rest, trabajar, descansar.

But, *Mas, Pero, Sino.*

but we use this word otherwise, pero nosotros usamos esta palabra en otro sentido.
what are you but a rogue? que eres tu sino un picaro?
they would have but one religion, no querian admitir sino una religion.
but that I fear my father, si no temiera á mi padre.

but for you I should have been killed, si no hubiera sido por vm. yo habria sido muerto.
but for him I should have escaped, sino hubiera sido por él yo me hubiera escapado.
hardly was the first tumult ended but another stir took place, apenas se habia sosegado el primer tumulto, cuando sucedió un otro movimiento.
I cannot but lament his misfortunes, no puedo dejar de lamentar sus contratiempos.
how can I but desire that? ¿como puedo dejar de desear eso?
there is none but what is afraid, no hay uno que no tema.
not a day passes but he comes to my house, no pasa un dia, sin que el venga á mi casa.
not but that it was right, no que dejase de ser justo.
but that you may know, mas para que vm. sepa.
but yesterday, no mas que ayer.
but a little while since, poco rato ha.
there wanted but a little and he had killed him, solo faltó un poco, para que le hubiese muerto.
the last but one, el penúltimo.
the last but two, el antepenúltimo.
but yet not the happiest, y con todo no el mas feliz.

By, *Por*.

I took my way by the park, tomi mi camino por el parque.
by sea and by land, por mar y por tierra.
by the way, de camino, de paso.
by-the-by, á propósito.
by day and night, de dia y de noche.
by this time twelve months, de aqui á un año.
higher by ten feet, mas alto con diez pies.
by stealth, á hurtadillas.
street by street, de calle en calle.
he was not seen by anybody, no fue visto de ninguno.
he died by the hands of the executioner, murió á manos del verdugo.
by the mother's side, del lado maternal.
by moon-light, á la luz de la luna.
I got it by heart, lo aprendí de memoria.

by-and-by, de aqui á un rato.
by how much? por cuanto?
by so much, por tanto.
little by little, poco á poco.
he has finished by this time, ya ha acabado.
one by one, uno á uno.
by no means, de ningun modo.

For, *Por, Porque.*

for if you go there, porque si vm. va allá.
for many years, por muchos años.
for these many years, despues de muchos años.
for the time to come, para en lo sucesivo.
for his imprudence, á causa de su imprudencia.
but for a good reason, si no fuera por cierto motivo.
for as much as he will, por todo lo que quisiere.
she could not speak for weeping, ella no podia hablar de llanto.
you will have it for your reward, vm. lo tendrá en recompensa suya.
for hearkening to him, por haberle dado oidos.
it is most fit for your age, eso es muy propio de su edad.
this was good for others too, esto convenia tambien á otros.
for his own sake, por su propia consideracion.
for my sake he did it, lo hizo, por consideracion á mí.
I entreat you for the sake of God, le ruego por el amor de Dios.
for all you are his father, aunque vm. sea su padre.
he came to see us for all that, vino á vernos á pesar de todo eso.
as for the other matters, en cuanto á las otras cosas.
and as for your intention, y en cuanto á la intencion de vm.
so that the General assigned ten dollars for every soldier, de suerte que el General señaló diez pesos á cada soldado.
if there be anything that you wish for, si hay otra cosa que vm. desee.

forasmuch as, por cuanto que.
had it not been for you, si no hubiera sido por vm.

From, *Desde.*

he goes from London to Bath in twelve hours, va desde Londres hasta Bath en doce horas.
from that time, desde entonces.
even from the beginning, desde el primer instante.
from whom? ¿de parte de quien?
from door to door, de puerta en puerta.
from hence,—thence, desde aqui,—alli.
from henceforth, de aqui en adelante.
from one to the other, de uno á otro.
from abroad, de un pais estraño.
separated from one another, separado uno de otro.

In, *En.*

in the night, in the dark, de noche, á oscuras.
in the reign of Augustus, bajo el reinado de Augusto.
in their own case, en su propio caso.
in the first place, en primer lugar.
in a joking manner, en chanza, chanceandose.
we are in good hopes, tenemos razon de esperar.
in the mean time, entre tanto.
a little in liquor, un poco alegre con beber.
in the very nick of time, á punto fijo, á propósito.
this stands me in two pounds, este me ha costado dos libras.
it will stand you in three, le costará á vm. tres.
he gave nothing in evidence but that he heard so, el no alegó otra prueba sino que lo habia oido decir.
he kept me in two hours, me detuvo, no me dejó salir.
they are all in and out together in a twinkling, se riñen, y se hacen amigos en un abrir y cerrar de ojos.
I shall go into the garden, iré adentro del jardin.
the mouse got into the hole, el raton ganó el agugero.

Of, *De.*

in the midst of the entertainment, en medio del festin.
be of good cheer, vamos, buen ánimo.
a Doctor of Laws, un Doctor en Leyes.
you have no need of a wife, vm. no necesita casarse.
which of them? cual de ellos?
out of every nation, escogido de cada nacion.
I will ease thee of this burden, te aliviaré de esta carga.
you had heard of it from somebody, vm. lo habia oido decir á alguno.
I will write to him of this affair, le escribiré sobre este asunto.
this friend of mine is his next kinsman, este amigo mio es su pariente mas cercano.
that horse of yours is a very devil, ese caballo de vm. es un verdadero diablo.
this book of his, este libro suyo.
this acquaintance of ours is but of very recent date, este conocimiento nuestro es de poco tiempo atrás.
what would become of your soul? ¿en que vendria á parar su alma?
that admits of no longer delay, eso no admite mas dilacion.
he is none of the most honest, el no es de los mas hombres de bien.
when I think of that, cuando pienso en eso.

On, Upon, *Sobre.*

to be on one's way, estar de camino.
to lean on one's elbow, apoyarse sobre el codo.
on every side, por todos lados.
on purpose, á propósito.
on the contrary, al contrario.
to play on the flute, tocar de flauta.
to have one's clothes on, estar vestido.
we came on this side London, he on foot, and I on horseback, vinimos de lado de acá de Londres el á pie, y yo á caballo.
do not lay any blame on me, no me culpe vm.

on this condition, and upon these terms, you may, con esta condicion, y en estos terminos, vm. puede.
upon pain of death, bajo pena de muerte.
letters upon letters, cartas sobre cartas.
take pity on me, compadecete de mí.
have mercy upon us, ten misericordia de nosotros.
I am upon a journey, estoy de viaje.
he took that money upon interest, tomó aquel dinero á interes.
upon the news of his death, á la noticia de su muerte.
upon the coming of Mr. ——, á la llegada del S^{or} ——.
upon what ground? con qué fundamento?
on a sudden, de improviso.
and so on, y asi lo demás.

Over, *Sobre.*

the evils that hung over our heads, los males que nos amenazaban.
holding their arms over their heads, teniendo las manos sobre sus cabezas.
over the sea, de la otra parte del mar.
over long (*a time*), demasiado largo.
there is no man over happy no hay hombre demasiado feliz.
it is over much, es demasiado.
over extraordinary things are difficult to be believed, las cosas demasiado extraordinarias, son dificultosas de creer.
unless you be told it a hundred times over, á menos que se lo repitan á vm. cien veces.
till his danger be over, hasta que haya pasado el peligro.
over night, la noche pasada.
twice over, over again, una segunda vez.
over against, en frente, delante.
all over the park, por todo el parque.
over and above, mas de la cuenta.
some books are to be turned over diligently, algunos libros se han de leer, y releer con ciudado.

you endeavour to bring over others to your opinion, vm. procura traer otros á su opinion.
he was set over all the rest, tenia autoridad sobre todos los demas.

To, *A*.

they neither do good to themselves, nor to others, no hacen bien ni á si mismos, ni á los otros.
to give way to the times, ceder á los circunstancias.
a ready way to honours, un camino abierto á los honores.
from Paris to London, desde Paris hasta Londres.
I have no friends to help me, no tengo amigos que me ayuden.
you seemed over desirous to go away, vm. parecia muy deseosa de retirarse.
shall I help you to some fish? quiere vm. que le sirva algun pescado?
will you help me to some omelet? quiere vm. mandarme un poco de tortilla de huevos?
it was so great as to hinder, era tan grande que impedia.
known to Indians, conocido á los Indios.
you are nothing to him, tu eres nada para él.
he thinks them clowns, in comparison to the others, el los tiene por rústicos, en comparacion de los otros.
your kindness to me, la bondad de vm. para conmigo.
I weep to think what will become of him, lloro al pensar lo que podrá sucederle.
you had been mad to have stood out against him, hubiera vm. sido un loco, en salir á oponerse á él.
we are now to treat first of his honesty, en primer lugar debemos ahora tratar de su probidad.
I called him to me, le llamé á mí.
that is nothing at all to me, no tengo nada que ver con eso.
I am glad to see you, me alegro de ver á vm.
do not take it to heart, no se apesadumbre por eso.
to his very great reproach, para su mayor deshonra.
to and from, yendo y viniendo, de aquí á alli.
today, tonight, hoy, esta noche.
the house next to his, la casa contigua á la suya.

from day to day, de dia en dia.
according to what he said, segun lo que dijo.
he calculated just to a day, calculó sin errar un dia.
as to the mother, en cuanto á la madre.
wonderful to hear, causa asombro el oir.
a fine army to look at, un ejercito lindo á la vista.
from hand to hand, de mano en mano.
the next to him, el mas próximo á él.
burnt first to a coal, and then to ashes, primeramente hecho un ascua, y luego reducido á cenizas.
not to my knowledge, no que yo lo sepa.
to a penny, hasta el último penique.
the world to come, la otra vida.
the age to come will pronounce upon our doings, la posteridad juzgará nuestras obras.
to wit, videlicet, á saber, (verbi gratiâ).

With, *Con.*

you were with him, vm. estaba con él.
with me, with thee, conmigo, contigo.
there is no reason why you should be angry with that, no hay motivo para que vm. se enoje por eso.
many diseases are cured with fasting and rest, muchas enfermedades se curan con no comer y reposar.
he killed him with his own hand, le mató con su propia mano.
filled with soot and cinders, lleno de hollin y ceniza.
with intent to, con intento de.
I had a mind to begin with that, tenia pensado principiar por eso.
what do you find amiss with it? que defecto le halla vm.?
sir, a word with you, señor, escuche una palabra.
with all my heart, de todo corazon.
what do you want with me? que quiere vm. conmigo?
things go not well with him, sus negocios no van bien.
he will die with cold, morirá de frio.
do you deal so with me? asi se porta vm. conmigo?
it is just so with me, lo mismo me sucede á mí.
with a good will, de buena gana.

APPENDIX.

EXCEPTIONS TO RULES GIVEN AT PAGE 21 ON THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

No. I.

Feminine Nouns ending in e, i, u.

Aguachirle, *slipslop.*
alsine, *chickweed.*
anagalide, *pimpernel* (*a plant*).
ave, *a fowl.*
azumbre, *a measure.*
barbarie, *barbarity.*
base, *basis.*
calvicie, *baldness.*
calle, *street.*
cariátide, *caryatides.*
carne, *flesh.*
catástrofe, *catastrophe.*
certidumbre, *certainty.*
churre, *grease.*
clase, *class.*
clave, *key.*
elemátide, *a plant.*
cohorte, *cohort.*
compages, *a joint.*
corambre, *hide.*
corriente, *stream.*
corte, *court.*
costumbre, *custom.*
crasicie, *plumpness.*
creciente, *flood tide.*
cumbre, *summit.*
elatine, *waterwort.*
enante, *a herb.*
epipáctide, *a plant.*
esferoide, *spheroid.*
especie, *species.*
estirpe, *race.*
etiópide, *a plant.*
falange, *phalanx.*
fase, *phases.*
fé, *faith.*
fievre, *fever.*
frente, *forehead.*
fuente, *fountain.*
gente, *people.*
hambre, *hunger.*
helice, *helix.*
helxine, *a plant.*
hemionite, *a plant.*
hipocistide, *a plant.*
hojaldre, *a kind of cake.*
incertidumbre, *uncertainty.*
indole, *temper.*
ingle, *groin.*
intemperie, *intemperateness.*

landre, *a tumour.*
laringe, *larynx.*
laude, *praise.*
leche, *milk.*
legumbre, *pulse.*
lente, *lens.*
liebre, *hare.*
liendre, *nit.*
lite, *litigation.*
llave, *key.*
lumbre, *fire.*
mansedumbre, *meekness.*
menguante, *ebb tide.*
mente, *mind.*
mole, *mass.*
molicie, *effeminacy.*
muchedumbre, *multitude.*
muerte, *death.*
mugre, *muck.*
nave, *nave.*
nieve *snow.*
noche, *night.*
pube, *cloud.*
paralaxe, *parallax.*
paraselene, *mock-moon.*
parte, *portion.*
patente, *patent.*
péplide, *a plant.*
pesadumbre, *grief.*
neste, *plague.*
pirámide, *pyramid.*
pixide, *pix.*
planicie, *plain.*
plebe, *rabble.*
podre, *pus.*
podredumbre, *rottenness.*
progenie, *progeny.*
prole, *issue.*
quiete, *quietus.*
salumbre, *flower of salt.*
salve, *a prayer.*
sangre, *blood.*
sede, *see.*
serie, *series.*
servidumbre, *servitudo.*
serpiente, *serpent.*
sirte, *quicksand.*
suerte, *chance.*
superficie, *superficies.*
tarde, *afternoon.*
teame, *a stone.*
techumbre, *roof.*
temperie, *temperature.*
tilde, *tittle.*
torre, *tower.*
trabe, *beam.*
trípode, *tripod.*
troje, *granary.*
ubre, *udder.*
urdimbre, *warp.*
viarce, *varix.*
vislumbre, *glimmering.*
xixide, *xirys* (*a plant*).
diocesi, *diocese.*
graciadei, *a herb.*
grey, *flock.*
ley, *law.*
metrópoli, *metropolis.*
palmacristi, *palmachristi.*
paráfrasi, *paraphrase.*
tribu, *tribe.*

No. II.

Feminine Nouns ending in l, n, r, z.

Aguamiel, *hydromel.*
cal, *lime.*
capital, *metropolis.*
carcel, *prison.*
col, *cabbage.*
decretal, *decretal.*
hiel, *gall.*
miel, *honey.*
piel, *skin.*
sal, *salt.*
señal, *signal.*
vocal, *vowel.*
Arrumazon, *stowage.*
barbechazon, *fallowing-time.*
binazon, *ploughing.*
cargazon, *cargo.*
clavazon, *row of nails.*
crin, *mane.*
desazon, *uneasiness.*
imagen, *image.*
plomazon, *gilder's cushion.*
razon, *reason.*
sarten, *frying-pan.*
sazon, *season.*
segazon, *reaping-time.*
sien, *temple.*
sinrazon, *wrong.*
trabazon, *splice.*
Bezoar, *bezoar.*
flor, *flower.*
labor, *work.*
segur, *axe.*
zoster, *shingles.*
Cerviz, *cervix.*
cocatrix, *cockatrice.*
codorniz, *quail.*
coz, *kick.*
cruz, *cross.*
faz, *visage.*
haz, *bundle.*
hez, *dregs.*
hoz, *sickle.*
luz, *light.*
matriz, *matrix.*
nariz, *nose.*
niñez, *childhood.*
nuez, *nut.*
paz, *peace.*
perdiz, *partridge.*
pez, *pitch.*
pomez, *pumice.*
raiz, *root.*
sobrehaz, *surface.*
sobrepelliz, *surplice.*
tez, *complexion.*
vez, *time.*
voz, *voice.*

N.B. *Brillantez* brilliancy, *estrechez* narrowness, *palidez* paleness, *tirantez* tenseness, and other nouns of the same terminations as the above, and denoting abstract qualities, are constantly feminine.

No. III.

Masculine Nouns ending in a.

Adema, *prop.*
albacea, *executor.*
alcavala, *percentage.*
almea, *storax.*
anagrama, *anagram.*
aneurisma, *aneurism.*
antipoda, *antipode.*
aporisma, *ecchymosis.*
apotegma, *apophthegm.*
axioma, *axiom.*
carisma, *divine gift.*
clima, *climate.*
cometa, *comet.*
crisma, *chrism.*
dia, *day.*
diafragma, *midriff.*
diagrama, *diagram.*
digama, *digamma.*
dilema, *dilemma.*
diploma, *diploma.*
dogma, *dogma.*
drama, *drama.*
edema, *œdema.*
enigma, *enigma.*
entimema, *enthymeme.*
epigrama, *epigram.*
esperma, *sperm.*
guardacosta, *revenue-cutter.*
guardarropa, *wardrobe.*
idioma, *idiom.*
largomira, *telescope.*
lema, *lemma.*
maná, *manna.*
mapa, *map.*
paradigma, *paradigm.*
paragua, *umbrella.*
pantagrama, *musical staff.*
planeta, *planet.*
poema, *poem.*
prisma, *prism.*
problema, *problem.*
progimnasma, *essay.*
sintoma, *symptom.*
sistema, *system.*
sofá, *sofa.*
sofisma, *sophism.*
tapaboca, *slap on the mouth.*
tema, *theme.*
teorema, *theorem.*
viva, *cheer* or *huzza.*

And all those nouns which by their meaning denote males, as has been observed, page 20.

There are a few nouns ending in *d* and *ion* which are of the masculine gender, and consequently are exceptions to the general rule given in page 21.

Adalid, *chieftain.*
alamud, *a door-bar.*
almud, *a measure.*
ardid, *wile.*

ataud, *coffin.*
cesped, *sod* or *turf.*
huesped, *guest.*
laud, *lute.*
sud, *south.*
talmud, *talmud.*
Avion, *a bird.*
embrion, *embryo.*
gorrion, *sparrow.*
guion, *standard.*
sarampion, *measles.*
morrion, *murrion.*
aluvion, *alluvium.*
chirrion, *tumbrel.*

And all augmentative nouns which end in *ion.*

Epicene Nouns.

Aguila, *eagle.*
ardilla, *squirrel.*
codorniz, *quail.*
cuervo, *crow.*
liebre, *hare.*
milano, *kite.*
perdiz, *partridge.*
pichon, *pigeon.*
rata, *rat.*
raton, *mouse.*
tórtola, *turtle-dove.*

Common Nouns.

Homicida, *homicide.*
martir, *martyr.*
testigo, *witness.*
virgen, *maid.*

Nouns of doubtful Gender.

Anatema, *anathema.*
arte, *art.*
azucar, *sugar.*
canal, *canal.*
cisma, *schism.*
cutis, *skin.*
dote, *dowry.*
emblema, *emblem.*
hermafrodita, *hermaphrodite.*
hipérbole, *hyperbole.*
margen, *margin.*
mar, *sea.*
nema, *seal of a letter.*
orden, *order.*
pringue, *dripping.*
puente, *bridge.*
reuma, *rheum.*

A Table of Spanish Adjectives, and some Substantives adjectively used, of a different etymology from the same in English.

Acérrimo, *most vigorous.*
aciago, *of bad omen.*
acorde, *concordant.*
acre, *acrid.*
advenedizo, *a new comer.*
afanoso, *eager.*
agreste, *clownish.*
agridulce, *between sweet and sour.*
agudo, *sharp.*
ahito, *surfeited with meat.*
amargo, *bitter.*
ameno, *pleasant.*
amugerado, *effeminate.*
anchuroso, *roomy.*
andariego, *unsettled.*
andorrero, *a rambling person.*
andrajoso, *ragged.*
anegadizo, *marshy.*
angosto, *narrow.*
añejo, *stale.*
añoso, *struck in years.*
apacible, *mild.*
apagado, *humble-minded.*
aparejado, *prepared.*
apartado, *retired.*
apasionado, *votarist.*
apetitoso, *relishable.*
apreciable, *valuable.*
arrojadizo, *missive.*
asequible, *obtainable.*
asombroso, *wonderful.*
aspero, *rough, rugged.*
asqueroso, *loathsome.*
astuto, *cunning.*
atrevido, *forward.*
ávido, *greedy.*
aviejado, *withered with age.*
avieso, *ill inclined.*
airoso, *graceful.*
azaroso, *unlucky.*
ázimo, *unfermented.*
azorado, *very much frightened.*
Baboso, *a drivelling person.*
bajo, *low.*
balbuciente, *stammering.*
baldio, *uncultivated land.*
barato, *cheap.*
barroso, *muddy.*
beato, *blessed.*
belicoso, *warlike.*
belitre, *low, mean.*
bellaco, *roguish.*
bello, *beautiful.*
benemérito, *meritorious.*
bezudo, *with thick lips.*
bienaventurado, *blessed.*
bienhablado, *polite.*
bienquisto, *esteemed by all.*
bisogno, *raw soldier.*
bizarro, *high-spirited.*
blando, *soft.*
blanducho, *flabby.*
bobático, *silly.*
bobo, *dolt.*
bonancible, *fair wind.*
bondadoso, *bountiful.*
bonito, *pretty.*
borracho, *drunkard.*
borrascoso, *stormy.*

boto, *blunt.*
bravío, *wild.*
breve, *brief.*
bribon, *vagabond.*
brioso, *full of spirits.*
bronco, *unpolished.*
brusco, *froward.*
bruto, *rough state.*
bullicioso, *clamorous.*
burdo, *coarse.*
Cabezudo, *big-headed.*
cabizbajo, *crest-fallen.*
cachetudo, *plump-cheeked.*
cachigordete, *short and stout.*
caduco, *doting.*
cálido, *hot.*
callejero, *street-walker.*
caluroso, *heating.*
campesino, *countryman.*
cansado, *wearied.*
carero, *who sells very dear.*
cariñoso, *lovely.*
caritativo, *charitable.*
carnoso, *fleshy.*
caro, *dear.*
casadero, *marriageable.*
cascarron, *withered person.*
casero, *homely.*
caudaloso, *rapid river.*
cegato, *purblind.*
cejijunto, *close-browed.*
cenagoso, *miry.*
cenceño, *lank, slender.*
ceñudo, *sour, frowning.*
cercano, *nigh, near.*
cerdoso, *full of bristles.*
cerrero, *wild in the mountains.*
cervigudo, *high-naped.*
cicatero, *niggardly.*
ciego, *blind.*
cimarron, *wild man* or *beast.*
circunvecino, *neighbouring.*
clarísimo, *most illustrious.*
cobarde, *cowardly.*
cochambroso, *excessively filthy.*
cochino, *pig-like.*
codicioso, *covetous.*
cogitabundo, *thoughtful.*
cojo, *lame of a foot.*
cojudo, *stallion.*
cojuelo, *a little lame.*
colérico, *easily provoked.*
colitorto, *hypocritical.*
colmilludo, *fanged, cunning.*
comadrero, *gossiping man.*
comedido, *civil, polite.*
comible, *eatable.*
comilon, *great eater.*
conchudo, *crafty.*
concorde, *of the same opinion.*
congojoso, *grievous.*
consabido, *aforesaid.*
contentadizo, *easily contented.*
contrahecho, *ill-shaped.*
copetudo, *high in its line.*
corcovado, *hump-backed.*
corredizo, *running.*
correnton, *gay in company.*
cortés, *polite.*
cortesano, *courteous.*
corto, *short.*
cosquilloso, *ticklish.*
costanero, *hilly.*

costilludo, *broad-shouldered.*
craso, *fat.*
crudo, *raw, unripe.*
cruento, *bloody.*
cuerdo, *discreet.*
cuitado, *wretched.*
culto, *pure in style.*
cumplido, *full.*
cumplimentero, *full of compliments.*
cursado, *versed.*
cursivo, *italic* (*letters*).
curvo, *crooked.*
chabacano, *ill finished.*
chacotero, *waggish.*
chancero, *jocose.*
charro, *gaudy.*
chato, *flat.*
chico, *small.*
chismoso, *tale-bearer.*
chistoso, *humorous.*
chocarrero, *buffooning.*
choco, *doting from age.*
chufletero, *waggish.*
chusco, *a pleasant fellow.*
Dadivoso, *bountiful.*
dañoso, *hurtful.*
debil, *feeble.*
decantado, *exaggerated.*
deifico, *god-like.*
delantero, *foremost.*
delgado, *thin.*
demasiado, *excessive.*
denodado, *bold.*
derecho, *straight.*
desabrido, *disrelished.*
desaforado, *huge.*
desaliñado, *sloven.*
desalmado, *profligate.*
desamorado, *deprived of all love.*
desapacible, *insipid.*
desapegado, *without affection.*
desastrado, *wretched.*
desatento, *uncivil.*
desatinado, *inconsiderate.*
desairado, *without grace.*
desazonado, *disgusted.*
descampado, *in the open air.*
descuidado, *careless.*
desdeñoso, *disdainful.*
desdichado, *pitiful.*
desembarazado, *disengaged.*
desemejante, *dissimilar.*
desgraciado, *unfortunate.*
desidioso, *negligent.*
deslenguado, *foul-tongued.*
desmedido, *unproportionable.*
desmesurado, *beyond measure.*
despejado, *free in manners.*
despierto, *awake.*
despilfarrado, *squanderer.*
desprevenido, *unprepared.*
desventurado, *unhappy.*
dichoso, *happy.*
diestro, *skilful.*
díscolo, *wayward.*
disimulado, *dissembled.*
dispar, *unlike.*
disparatado, *who talks at random.*
docto, *learned.*
dolorido, *doleful.*
doloroso, *sorrowful.*
doloso, *deceitful.*

domable, *tameable.*
donairoso, *sprightly.*
donoso, *gay, pleasant.*
dulce, *sweet.*
duro, *hard.*
Echadizo, *sent to pry.*
embaucador, *artful.*
embustero, *liar.*
emérito, *meritorious.*
empalagoso, *nauseous.*
encojido, *low-spirited.*
endechoso, *mournful.*
enojadizo, *fretful.*
enojoso, *vexatious.*
enredoso, *puzzling.*
entrañable, *intimate.*
escabroso, *rough.*
espantable, *frightful.*
espantadizo, *easily frightened.*
espeso, *thick.*
espinoso, *thorny.*
espiritoso, *full of courage.*
espumoso, *frothy.*
esquivo, *shy.*
estable, *permanent.*
esteril, *barren.*
estrecho, *narrow.*
exangüe, *bloodless.*
exánime, *languid.*
ejecutable, *performable.*
Factible, *feasible.*
faldero, *cot-quean.*
fanfarron, *braggart.*
fatuo, *foolish.*
faustoso, *pompous.*
fementido, *false.*
feo, *ugly.*
feroz, *fierce.*
festivo, *gay.*
fidedigno, *beliefworthy.*
flaco, *lean, meagre.*
flemoso, *inactive.*
flojo, *lazy, loose.*
fofo, *puffy.*
fogoso, *fiery.*
follon, *idling.*
forcejudo, *very strong.*
fornido, *robust.*
ferrudo, *vigorous.*
fragoso, *craggy.*
frio, *cold.*
friolento, *chilly.*
fronterizo, *bordering.*
fuerte, *strong.*
funesto, *sad, mournful.*
fusco, *dark, obscure.*
Galano, *well dressed.*
gallardo, *gay and airy.*
gangoso, *speaking through the nose.*
garboso, *genteel.*
garrido, *spruce.*
gayo, *gay.*
gazmoñero, *hypocrite.*
goloso, *lover of tid-bits.*
gordo, *fat.*
gozoso, *content.*
grandioso, *very grand.*
graso, *oily, fat.*
gredoso, *marly.*
grosero, *uncivil.*
grueso, *thick, bulky.*
guapo, *courageous.*
guardoso, *parsimonious.*
gustoso, *pleasing.*
Habil, *able.*
hambriento, *hungry.*
haragan, *sluggard.*
harinoso, *mealy.*

harto, *satiated.*
hazañoso, *valorous.*
hechizero, *bewitching.*
hediondo, *fetid.*
hembra, *female.*
hermoso, *handsome.*
hidalgo, *of a good family.*
holgazan, *a loiterer.*
hondo, *deep.*
horrendo, *hideous.*
horroroso, *frightful.*
hueco, *hollow.*
huero, *addle.*
huraño, *coy.*
Ileso, *unhurt.*
iluso, *deluded.*
impávido, *undaunted.*
imperito, *unskilful.*
impertérrito, *unterrified.*
imperturbable, *undisturbed.*
improbo, *laborious and without profit.*
improviso, *not provided against.*
impudico, *immodest.*
inagotable, *unexhausted.*
incesable, *incessant.*
inconcuso, *out of doubt.*
incruento, *bloodless.*
indemne, *harmless.*
inerme, *disarmed.*
infando, *very infamous.*
infausto, *unlucky.*
inicuo, *iniquitous.*
inmundo, *unclean.*
inopinado, *unexpected.*
inquieto, *restless.*
insólito, *unusual.*
insomne, *without sleep.*
insondable, *unfathomable.*
insuave, *unpleasant.*
inverisimil, *unlikely.*
invernizo, *wintry.*
iracundo, *irritable.*
irrisible, *worthy of being laughed at.*
Jarifo, *showy.*
Ladino, *cunning.*
lagañoso, *blear-eyed.*
lagrimoso, *full of tears.*
lampiño, *without beard.*
lastimoso, *lamentable.*
lato, *large, dilated.*
leal, *loyal.*
lejano, *distant.*
lenguaz, *talkative with impertinence.*
lento, *slow, tardy.*
lerdo, *dullbrained.*
lijero, *swift.*
lindo, *pretty.*
liso, *even, smooth.*
lisonjero, *flatterer.*
listado, *striped.*
listo, *ready.*
liviano, *light, unchaste.*
llano, *plain, level.*
lleno, *full.*
loco, *mad.*
lodoso, *miry.*
lozano, *luxuriant.*
luctuoso, *mournful.*
lustroso, *glossy.*
Macho, *male.*
macizo, *solid.*
maduro, *ripe.*
magro, *meagre.*
majo, *neatly dressed.*
maldito, *cursed.*
malo, *bad.*

malquisto, *detested by all.*
malvado, *wicked.*
manco, *lame of a hand.*
maniroto, *spendthrift.*
manso, *meek, tame.*
mañoso, *handy.*
maravilloso, *wonderful.*
marrajo, *wily.*
mediano, *middling.*
medroso, *chicken-hearted.*
meduloso, *full of marrow.*
melindroso, *prudish.*
meloso, *sweet and pleasant.*
membrudo, *muscular.*
mendoso, *false, lying.*
menesteroso, *necessitous.*
menguado, *a silly fellow.*
mensual, *monthly.*
mentiroso, *liar.*
mestizo, *of a mongrel race.*
mezquino, *stingy.*
mimoso, *prudish.*
mocho, *lopped, unhorned.*
modorro, *drowsy.*
mofletudo, *chub-cheeked.*
mohino, *peevish.*
mohoso, *mouldy.*
mollar, *soft, tender.*
mondo, *clean, unmingled.*
mono, *very neat and pretty.*
mordaz, *satirical.*
morlaco, *affecting ignorance.*
moroso, *sluggish.*
mortecino, *dead of a natural death.*
mostrenco, *strayed.*
mozo, *lad (from 14 to 25).*
mudo, *dumb.*
mugeril, *womanish.*
murrio, *dumpish.*
mustio, *sad.*
Necio, *foolish, ignorant.*
nefando, *nefarious.*
neto, *unadulterated.*
nimio, *scrupulous.*
nuevo, *new.*
Obcecado, *blinded.*
obeso, *obese, fat.*
ochavado, *octagon.*
ochenton, *eighty years old.*
ocioso, *idle.*
ojizarco, *grey-eyed.*
ojizaino, *squint-eyed.*
oloroso, *odoriferous.*
orgulloso, *haughty.*
osado, *daring.*
osudo, *bony.*
Pacato, *quiet, harmless.*
pachorrudo, *very dull.*
paisano, *of the same country.*
palabrero, *a babbling prattler.*
palaciego, *one belonging to the king's household.*
paludoso, *swampy.*
pantanoso, *marshy.*
panzudo, *big-bellied.*
parejo, *like another.*
parlero, *very talkative.*
parvo, *small.*
pasadero, *passable.*
pasmoso, *marvellous.*
pávido, *timorous.*
pavorido, *intimidated.*
pavoroso, *awful.*
pazquato, *a simpleton.*
pazpuerco, *a very dirty fellow.*

pecoso, *freckly.*
pedregoso, *full of stones.*
pegadizo, *clammy.*
pegajoso, *adhesive.*
pelmazo, *very phlegmatic.*
pelon, *without hair.*
peludo, *hazy.*
pendenciero, *quarrelsome.*
penoso, *painful.*
peñascoso, *rocky.*
pequeño, *little, short.*
perdidizo, *designedly lost.*
perezoso, *lazy.*
pesaroso, *sorrowful.*
pícaro, *knavish, roguish.*
poltron, *idle.*
porfiado, *obstinate.*
porro, *very stupid.*
postizo, *artificial.*
postrero, *the last in order.*
potísimo, *most principal.*
precipuo, *chief, principal.*
preclaro, *renown.*
predilecto, *most beloved.*
preeccelso, *very illustrious.*
présago, *ominous.*
propincuo, *near, immediate.*
provechoso, *profitable.*
provecto, *advanced in learning.*
puerco, *nasty, unclean.*
pulido, *neat and graceful.*
pundonoroso, *full of honour.*
puntilloso, *full of quirks.*
Quantioso, *copious.*
quebradizo, *brittle.*
quejicoso, *always complaining.*
quejoso, *complainer.*
Rabioso, *irascible.*
rabon, *short-tailed.*
raso, *bare, clear.*
rastrero, *creeping.*
rato, *firm, valid.*
raudo, *rapid, violent.*
recio, *stout, strong.*
recto, *right.*
regalon, *pampered* or *petted.*
regibado, *humpbacked.*
regordete, *fat and small.*
remilgado, *affected.*
remolon, *lazy.*
rencilloso, *quarrelsome.*
rengo, *hip-shot.*
respondon, *an impertinent replier.*
retozon, *frolicsome.*
revoltoso, *turbulent.*
rezeloso, *mistrustful.*
risueño, *smiling.*
rollizo, *round and strong.*
romo, *without point.*
roncero, *a tardy person.*
ronco, *hoarse.*
roñoso, *niggardly.*
rufian, *pander, a pimp.*
rufo, *red-haired.*
ruidoso, *noisy.*
ruin, *mean, vile.*
rumboso, *pompous.*
rútilo, *flame-coloured.*
Sabio, *sage, wise.*
sabroso, *relishable.*
salado, *witty with grace.*
salitroso, *nitrous.*
salobre, *brackish.*
sandío, *nonsensical.*
sangriento, *bloody.*

sano, *in good health, sound.*
sañudo, *stern.*
seco, *dry.*
sediento, *thirsty.*
semestre, *space of six months.*
semivivo, *half-alive.*
sencillo, *simple.*
sequaz, *follower.*
serrano, *highlander.*
servicial, *obsequious.*
sesudo, *of great prudence.*
setenton, *seventy years old.*
sigiloso, *reserved.*
silvestre, *wild, rustic.*
simpar, *matchless.*
sinigual, *unparalleled.*
sitibundo, *thirsty.*
soberbio, *proud.*
socarron, *sly.*
solo, *alone.*
sombrío, *shady.*
somero, *shallow.*
sordo, *deaf.*
soso, *unsavoury.*
suave, *smooth, soft.*
súbito, *sudden.*
sucio, *dirty.*
sumo, *the highest.*
superchero, *deceitful.*
susodicho, *the abovesaid.*
Tacaño, *sordid, stingy.*
tachoso, *faulty.*
taciturno, *very silent.*
tamaño, *size.*
tardío, *tardy.*
tartamudo, *stammer.*
taimado, *very crafty.*
temerario, *rash.*
tempestivo, *seasonable.*
temprano, *anticipated.*
terco, *pertinacious.*
terso, *burnished.*
tibio, *lukewarm.*
tierno, *tender.*
tieso, *stiff.*
tiñoso, *scabby.*
tocayo, *cognominal.*
tonto, *silly.*
torpe, *dull, unchaste.*
torpísimo, *most base.*
torvo, *stern, fierce.*
tosco, *coarse, gross.*
trabajoso, *elaborate.*
tragon, *gluttonous.*
tramposo, *a guller at play.*
transido, *starved.*
trapajoso, *in tatters.*
travieso, *mischievous.*
trimestre, *space of three months.*
triste, *woeful, sad.*
tuerto, *blind of one eye.*
tuno, *vagabond.*
turbio, *muddy.*
turnio, *squint-eyed.*
Uberrimo, *most fruitful.*
ufano, *elated, conceited.*
último, *the last.*
urbano, *civil.*
Vacío, *empty.*
varonil, *manly.*
vedijudo, *matted.*
vejancon, *an impertinent old man.*
velloso, *downy.*
ventoso, *windy.*
ventrudo, *big-bellied.*
venturero, *incidental.*
venturo, *future.*

venturoso, *lucky.*
venusto, *comely.*
vergonzoso, *shameful.*
verisimil, *likely.*
viejo, *old.*
villano, *villager, villain.*
vitando, *to be shunned.*
vivarracho, *very brisk.*
vocinglero, *babbler.*
voltario, *fickle.*
Yermo, *desert.*
yerto, *frozen with cold.*
Zaguero, *going behind.*
zahareño, *shy.*
zalamero, *flatterer.*
zambo, *bandy-legged.*
zancudo, *long-shanked.*
zarposo, *muddy.*
zeloso, *jealous.*
zizañero, *makebate.*
zonzo, *insipid.*
zopo, *maimed, clumsy.*
zorronglon, *idle grumbler.*
zumbon, *waggish.*
zurdo, *left-handed.*

These are all the simple adjectives in the Spanish of a different etymology from the same in English, which the student is recommended to commit to memory. There are, besides, other compound adjectives of singular grace and expression, and peculiar to the Spanish language: these are formed by the union of some substantives to other adjectives, as has been stated at page 19. The substantives more generally used in the composition of these words are, *barba*, *boca*, *cara*, *mano*, *pata*, *pelo*, all which change the last letter into *i*, as may be seen in the following words, given as examples.

Barba, *Beard.*

Barbiblanco, *having a hoary beard.*
barbicano, *having a grey beard.*
barbihecho, *having just been shaved.*
barbilampiño, *having but little beard.*
barbilindo, *well-shaved or trimmed.*
barbilucio, *having a smooth face like a child.*
barbinegro, *black-bearded.*
barbipeniente, *having the beard growing* (*applied to a lad*).
barbirubio, *red-bearded.*
barbirucio, *having a black-and-white beard.*

Boca, *Mouth.*

Boquiabierto, *a person who walks about gaping.*
boquiancho, *wide-mouthed.*
boquiangosto, *narrow-mouthed.*
boquiconejudo, *hare-lipped.*
boquiduro, *hard-mouthed.*
boquifresco, *fresh-mouthed.*
boquifruncido, *having the mouth contracted.*
boquihendido, *large-mouthed.*
boquihundido, *having the mouth sunk in from want of teeth.*
boquimuelle, *easily to be governed.*
boquinatural, *having the mouth neither too tender nor too hard (applied to a horse).*
boquirrasgado, *deep-mouthed.*
boquiroto, *a loquacious person.*
boquirubio, *a simpleton who makes love.*
boquiseco, *dry-mouthed.*
boquisumido, *having the mouth naturally sunk.*
boquituerto, *wry-mouthed.*

Cara, *Face.*

Cariacedo, *having a sour-looking countenance.*
cariacontecido, *having a face expressive of grief.*
cariacuchillado, *having the face marked with cuts.*
cariaguileño, *having an aquiline nose.*
cariairado, *having an angry face.*
cariampollado, *plump-cheeked.*
cariancho, *broad-faced.*
caribobo, *having a stupid sheepish look.*
caricuerdo, *having a composed mien.*
caridelantero, *brazen-faced.*
caridoliente, *of a mournful countenance.*
cariescrito, *having a corrugated surface like a melon.*
cariexento, *showing great impudence.*
carifruncido, *having a face contracted with wrinkles.*
carigordo, *having a face full of flesh.*
carilamido, *having an immodest face.*
carilargo, *long-visaged.*

carilucio, *having a shining face.*
carilleno *or* carilludo, *having a round face.*
carinegro, *of a swarthy complexion.*
carininfo, *having a womanish face* (*applied to a man*).
caripando, *having an idiot's face.*
cariparejo, *having a similar face.*
cariredondo, *having a round face.*

Pata, *Leg and Foot.*

Patiabierto, *having the legs far asunder.*
paticojo, *lame-legged.*
patiestebado, *bow-legged.*
patihendido, *cloven-footed.*
patitieso, *a person who walks affectedly.*
patituerto, *crook-legged.*
patizambo, *bandy-legged.*

Pelo, *Hair.*

Peliagudo, *having long fine hair.*
peliblando, *having soft downy hair.*
pelicorto, *short-haired.*
pelilargo, *long-haired.*
pelinegro, *black-haired.*
pelirubio, *having the hair of a flaxen colour.*
pelitieso, *having strong hair like bristles.*

A Table of Spanish Adverbs of a different Etymology from the same in English.

Abinicio, *from the beginning.*
abajo, *down.*
acá, *hither.*
acaso, *by chance.*
acerca, *about.*
acordemente, *uniformly.*
de acuerdo, *by common consent.*
acuestas, *on one's back.*
adefesios, *a foolish talk.*
adelante, *further off.*
en adelante, *hereafter.*
ademas, *besides, moreover.*
á deshora, *unseasonably.*
adonde, *whither.*
adrede, *on purpose.*
ahora, *now.*
ahí, *there.*
ainas, *near happening.*
allá, *yonder.*
allende, *on the other side.*
allí, *there.*
por alto, *by stealth.*
alto, *loudly.*
á la mano, *hard by.*
á manos llenas, *plentifully.*
amenudo, *often.*
á mejor andar, *at best.*
á peor andar, *at worst.*
anoche, *last night.*
ante anoche, *the night before last.*
anticipadamente, *previously.*
antes, *before.*
aparte, *aside.*
apriesa, *hastily.*
apelo, *to the purpose.*
aprisa, *in haste.*
á pie, *on foot.*
de aqui para allí, *to and fro.*
aquí, *here.*
á posta, *designedly.*
arriba, *up.*
al rededor, *round about.*
á sabiendas, *knowingly.*
ni por asomo, *not in the least.*
así, *thus.*
atientas, *at random.*
atinadamente, *dexterously.*
atras, *backwards.*
aun, *still, even.*
á una, *conjointly.*
ayer, *yesterday.*
anteayer, *the day before yesterday.*
con ayre, *with grace.*
en ayunas, *without breakfast.*
Bajo, *under.*
debajo, *beneath.*
bastante, *enough.*
bien, *well.*
bien que, *although.*
ahora bien, *since it is so.*
mas bien, *rather.*
bizarramente, *cleverly.*
blandamente, *softly.*
bobamente, *stupidly.*
de bobilis bobilis, *without pain and without merits.*
á boca llena, *openly.*

de manos á boca, *unexpectedly.*
en breve, *by-and-by.*
brevemente, *briefly.*
en bruto, *in a raw state.*
de buenas á buenas, *spontaneously.*
á bulto, *by the bulk.*
Cabalmente *or* por sus cabales, *exactly.*
á caballo, *on horseback.*
en cabello, *in a dishevelled manner.*
de cabo á cabo, *from head to tail.*
de un cabo á otro, *from one end to the other.*
cada y cuando, *whensoever.*
caducamente, *dotingly.*
en caliente, *on the spot.*
calla callando, *with dissimulation.*
de callada, *very privately.*
de camino, *on the way.*
de cara, *in one's face.*
á carga cerrada, *boisterously.*
en cueros, *stark naked.*
á carrera abierta, *at full speed.*
de carrera, *with speed.*
de carretilla, *by custom.*
casi, *almost.*
caso que, *in case that.*
de caso pensado, *deliberately.*
cata! *look!*
cerca, *near.*
á puerta cerrada, *in a hidden manner.*
á chorros, *flowingly.*
por cierto, *certainly.*
por cima, *on the top.*
á las claras, *publicly.*
so color, *under pretext.*
como? *how?*
comodamente, *leisurely.*
como quiera, *however.*
como quiera que, *nevertheless.*
á competencia, *disputedly.*
por lo comun, *commonly.*
de concierto, *according to agreement.*
en conclusion, *in short.*
concluyentemente, *conclusively.*
confiadamente, *assuredly.*
en confianza, *confidently.*
conforme, *according to.*
conformemente, *conformably.*
en conformidad, *under that condition.*
congruentemente, *congruously.*
conjuntamente, *conjointly.*
de contado, *immediately.*
en continente, *reckly.*
en contorno, *round about.*
en contra, *against.*
corporalmente, *bodily.*
á todo correr, *with all speed.*
de corrida, *hastily.*
á la corta ó á larga, *sooner or later.*
cortamente, *sparingly.*
cortesmente, *courteously.*
cosa de, *about.*

que cosa? *what is the matter?*
á toda costa, *at all hazards.*
á costo y costas, *at first cost.*
á cox cox, *in a lame manner.*
crecidamente, *largely.*
en un credo, *in a trice.*
cuando, *when.*
de cuando en cuando, *now and then.*
encubiertamente, *in a hidden manner.*
en cuclillas, *squat upon the tail.*
á cuento, *to the purpose.*
por debajo de cuerda, *underhandedly.*
cuerpo á cuerpo, *hand to hand.*
en cuerpo de camisa, *half-dressed.*
en cuerpo, *without cloak.*
en cuerpo y en alma, *entirely.*
cuesta arriba, *with pain and labour.*
bajo, *under.*
bajo de mano, *underhandedly.*
de balde, *for nothing.*
debidamente, *duly.*
decorosamente, *decently.*
de mano en mano, *hand in hand.*
por demás, *too much.*
demasiado, *too much by far.*
denantes, *a time just past.*
á detenlladas, *by bites.*
dentro, *within.*
derechamente, *straightly.*
á la derecha, *to the right hand.*
hecho y derecho, *uprightly.*
desabridamente, *harshly.*
desacertadamente, *without reflexion.*
desacordadamente, *unadvisedly.*
desaforadamente, *outrageously.*
desalmadamente, *inhumanly.*
desasosegadamente, *restlessly.*
desastradamente, *wretchedly.*
desatinadamente, *inconsiderately.*
desairadamente, *unhandsomely.*
en descampado, *in the open air.*
al descuido y con cuidado, *with an affected carelessness.*
despacio, *slowly.*
á despecho, *in spite of.*
derepente, *on a sudden.*
despues, *afterwards.*
dias ha, *many days ago.*
lo dicho dicho, *I stand to what I say.*
á diestro y siniestro, *to the right and left.*
á diferencia, *with the difference.*
á disgusto, *contrary to one' will.*
á lo disimulado, *slily.*

á distincion, *with distinction.*
al doble, *doubly.*
donde quiera, *anywhere.*
de una parte á otra, *from place to place.*
de donde? *from whence?*
por donde? *by what way?*
á dos manos, *with both hands.*
duramente, *hardly.*
En efecto, *in fact.*
encarecidamente, *in an endearing manner.*
encima, *upon, above.*
enfrente, *the opposite side.*
enhorabuena, *well and good.*
enhoramala, *to send one off with contempt.*
á mi entender, *in my opinion.*
por entero, *entirely.*
entonces, *then.*
entrañablemente, *heartily.*
entre dos aguas, *to be wavering.*
entremanos, *in hand.*
entre tanto, *meanwhile.*
á escondidas, *by stealth.*
establemente, *permanently.*
exabrupto, *abruptly.*
en extremo, *extremely.*
extramuros, *outside of the town.*
de falso, *in a false manner.*
á prima faz, *at first sight.*
fementidamente, *falsely.*
festivamente, *joyfully.*
al fiado, *upon trust.*
en flor, *in its infancy.*
á fondo, *radically.*
de forma, *in such a manner.*
forzadamente, *forcibly.*
á viva fuerza, *by great force and resolution.*
gallardamente, *pleasantly.*
de golpe y zumbido, *unexpectedly.*
de un golpe, *at once.*
grandiosamente, *splendidly.*
á granel, *in a heap.*
gratamente, *gratefully.*
harto, *enough.*
hilo á hilo, *drop by drop.*
holgadamente, *largely.*
de improviso, *on a sudden.*
interin, *in the mean time.*
jamas, *never.*
por junto, *by the lump.*
al pie de la letra, *punctually.*
levemente, *lightly.*
á la lijera, *in a light manner.*
luego, *by-and-by.*
llanamente, *plainly.*
de lleno en lleno, *thoroughly.*
á tontas y locas, *inconsiderately.*
en lugar de, *instead of.*
mal, *badly.*
de mal en peor, *worse and worse.*
malvadamente, *wickedly.*
mano á mano, *in union.*
mañana, *tomorrow.*
á manos llenas, *copiously.*
mas, *more.*
á mas tardar, *the latest.*
á mas y mejor, *highly.*
de mas á mas, *even further.*

sin mas acá ni mas allá, *without any accountable reason.*
sin mas ni mas, *without more ado.*
maximamente, *chiefly.*
mayormente, *especially.*
medianamente, *tolerably well.*
mejor, *better.*
de memoria, *by heart.*
menguadamente, *dishonourably.*
por menor, *by retail.*
menos, *less.*
á menudo, *often.*
mientras, *whilst.*
de monton, *all in a heap.*
motu propio, *of one's own accord.*
mucho, *much.*
muy, *very.*
nimiamente, *in a very prolix way.*
no, *not.*
ni, *nor.*
de ordinario, *usually.*
nunca, *never.*
á la par, *at the same time.*
de par en par, *said of a door when wide open.*
á buen paso, *at a good rate.*
de paso, *in the way.*
mas que de paso, *hastily.*
á pelo, *to the purpose.*
peor, *worse.*
por qué? *why?*
porque, *because.*
á pesar, *in spite of.*
por ventura, *perhaps.*
posteriormente, *lastly.*
de cuerpo presente, *lying down dead.*
presto, *ready.*
prontamente, *quickly.*
fuera de proposito, *untimely.*
de puntillas, *without noise.*
á punto fijo, *exactly.*
á puñados, *by handfuls.*
á puño cerrado, *with might and main.*
de propio puño, *with one's own hand.*
de cuando en cuando, *from time to time.*
cuanto antes, *the sooner the better.*
por cuanto, *inasmuch as.*
quedo, *gently.*
de rato en rato, *from time to time.*
recio, *hardly.*
de refresco, *anew.*
regladamente, *according to rule.*
sin sentir, *without being seen, felt or known.*
al sesgo, *slopingly.*
de por sí, *separately.*
socolor, *under pretext.*
á la sordina, *very privately.*
de súbito, *suddenly.*
de suerte que, *so that.*
de suyo, *of his own accord.*
tanto, *so much.*
tambien, *also.*
tampoco, *neither.*
tarde, *late.*
temprano, *early, too soon.*

tenuamente, *slightly.*
en terminos terminantes, *in express terms.*
con tiempo, *at good time.*
á tientas, *obscurely.*
de una tirada, *at one stretch.*
á todo tirar, *to the utmost.*
torpemente, *dishonestly.*
á tras mano, *out of the way.*
de tropel, *tumultuously.*
en vela, *on the watch.*
de veras, *in truth.*
á veces, *sometimes.*
en vez, *instead of.*
tal vez, *perhaps.*
las mas veces, *most times.*
de buena gana, *heartily.*
de mala gana, *grudgingly.*
cuantas veces? *how often?*
cuantas veces, *as often.*

THE END.

LONDON:
PRINTED BY RICHARD TAYLOR,
RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.

112

11

135 h

64

11

5.24

2

14. 5-2

3 5-0

3 2

14

20

5 64

48 80

S0-BDE-943